

## About the Book

"Biotech Miracles: Harnessing the Power of Microbes" is a fascinating exploration into the world of microbes and the transformative role they play in biotechnology. The book delves into how microbes—tiny, unseen organisms that thrive everywhere, from the soil beneath our feet to extreme environments like volcanic vents—are being harnessed in innovative ways to tackle global challenges. Through detailed scientific insights and case studies, the book showcases how microbes are engineered to produce biofuels, clean up environmental pollutants, enhance crop resilience, and develop life-saving medicines. Aimed at both scientific and general audiences, the book covers recent advancements in microbial engineering, explaining how researchers leverage CRISPR, synthetic biology, and other tools to modify microbial genomes for specific, beneficial outcomes. It highlights groundbreaking projects, such as bacteria that can degrade plastic waste or yeast modified to produce insulin. Through accessible language, the book offers readers a vision of a more sustainable and healthier future enabled by microbial biotechnology, demonstrating how these microscopic organisms could revolutionize fields like agriculture, energy, environmental conservation, and healthcare.

Biotech Miracles: Harnessing the Power of Microbes

# BIOTECH MIRACLES Harnessing the Power of Microbes

Editor

**Dr. Sabyasachi Ghosh**

Authors

**Dr. Debjit De**

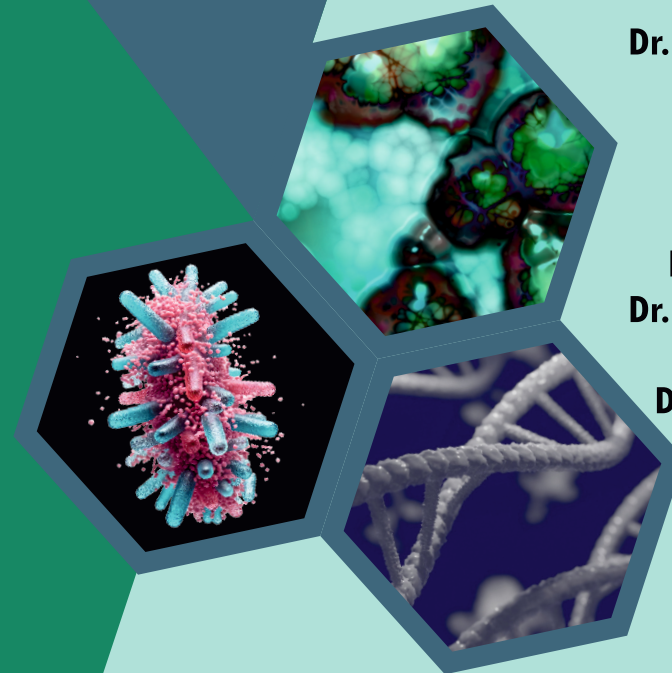
**Dr. Priyankar Pal**

**Dr. Semanti Ghosh**

**Dr. Sabyasachi Ghosh**

**Suranjana Sarkar**

**Dr. Subhasis Sarkar**



Published by  
Integrated Publications,  
H. No. 3, Pocket - H34, Sector - 3  
Rohini, Delhi - 110085, India  
Toll Free (India): 18001234070  
Email: [printintegrated@gmail.com](mailto:printintegrated@gmail.com)



Integrated Publications



INTEGRATED PUBLICATIONS  
NEW DELHI

# **Biotech Miracles: Harnessing the Power of Microbes**

**Editor**

**Dr. Sabyasachi Ghosh**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India

**Integrated Publications™  
New Delhi**

***Published By: Integrated Publications™***

*Integrated Publications*

*H. No. - 3 Pocket - H34, Sector - 3,*

*Rohini, Delhi-110085, India*

*Email - info@integratedpublications.in*

***Editor: Dr. Sabyasachi Ghosh***

*The author/publisher has attempted to trace and acknowledge the materials reproduced in this publication and apologize if permission and acknowledgements to publish in this form have not been given. If any material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so that we may rectify it.*

**© *Integrated Publications***

***Publication Year: 2024***

***Edition: 1<sup>st</sup>***

***Pages: 193***

***ISBN: 978-93-5834-436-3***

***Book DOI: <https://doi.org/10.62778/int.book.479>***

***Price: ₹ 795/-***

## List of Authors

**Dr. Debjit De**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Dr. Priyankar Pal**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Dr. Semanti Ghosh**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Dr. Sabyasachi Ghosh**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Suranjana Sarkar**

Associate Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Dr. Subhasis Sarkar**

Assistant Professor, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, 700121, India



## Contents

S. No	Chapters	Page No.
1.	Microbial Interactions and Their Implications in Oral Cancer Pathogenesis Shanwoli Kanjilal and Debjit De	01-23
2.	Foodomics and Its Analytical Techniques Sudipa Mukherjee and Priyankar Pal	25-41
3.	Medicinal Review of <i>Costus igneus</i> : The Insulin Plant Rajiv Gosai and Semanti Ghosh	43-54
4.	Functional Effect of Yogurt in Human Health Ramu Samanta and Semanti Ghosh	55-71
5.	Role of <i>Helicobacter pylori</i> in Gastric Carcinogenesis Ritika Roy, Riya Ghosh, Tilatoma Dasgupta, Srijani Karmakar and Semanti Ghosh	73-82
6.	Phage Therapy: A Promising Paradigm Shift in Antibiotic Resistance Srijani Karmakar, Sahely Roy, Riya Ghosh, Ritika Roy and Semanti Ghosh	83-93
7.	Algae-Bacteria Consortium: A Current Approach for Aquatic Clean Up Arpita Chakraborty, Dipti Das, Keya Mandal, Supriya Kumar Bose and Sabyasachi Ghosh	95-105
8.	Decoding Food Spoilage: Microbial Culprits and Mechanisms Diksha Adhikari, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar	107-122
9.	Exploring the Role of Melatonin in Disease Prevention and Anti-Aging Jhulik Das, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar	123-134

10. **Electroactive Microbes: Exploring Microbial Bioelectricity** 135-150  
Dipti Das, Tanisha Bhowmick, Swastika Dutta, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar
11. **Innovations and Advancements in Synthetic Skin Technology** 151-162  
Anwesha Das, Prity Singh, Tiyasha Saha, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar
12. **Bioplastic Production from Microalgal Species: A Review** 163-172  
Shristi Dey, Bidisha Ghosh, Suranjana Sarkar, Semanti Ghosh and Subhasis Sarkar
13. **Roles of Natural Microflora Present in Ganga Water** 173-193  
Subhasree Roy, Dr. Subhashish Sarkar and Dr. Tanmay Ghosh

**Chapter - 1**  
**Microbial Interactions and Their Implications in  
Oral Cancer Pathogenesis**

**Authors**

**Shanwoli Kanjilal**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

**Debjit De**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India





# Chapter - 1

## Microbial Interactions and Their Implications in Oral Cancer Pathogenesis

Shanwoli Kanjilal and Debjit De

### Abstract

Oral cancer, which affects the mouth, tongue, lips, and throat, is a major cancer of the head and neck region in the world. Tobacco smoking, alcohol consumption, poor nutrition, poor oral hygiene, human papillomavirus (HPV) are the traditional most important risk factors and have high impacts on oral cancer as well as periodontal disease. It is a genetic disorder associated with heightened susceptibility to oral squamous cell carcinoma. Utilizing advanced sequencing technologies and spatial profiling methods, along with the risk factors and genetic changes there is a complex relationship present between oral microbiome and the oral cancer. Emphasizing the role of 16S rRNA sequencing in identifying microbial associations and risk factors, the review significantly contributes to our understanding of the oral microbiome. The groundbreaking non-invasive test, CancerDetect for Oral & Throat cancer™ (CDOT), emerges as a promising tool for early cancer detection. This review underscores the intricate connections between oral microbes, risk factors, and various forms of oral cancer, offering insights that may shape future preventive strategies and diagnostic approaches. This comprehensive extensive review navigates the.

**Keywords:** Oral cancer, Oral microbes, Microbial diversity

### Introduction

Head and neck cancer (HNC) presents a global health challenge, influenced by factors like tobacco, alcohol, and human papillomavirus (HPV). The oral microbiome, crucial in those with periodontal disease, plays a key role in understanding HNC risk. Recent advances in sequencing technology have hinted at potential links between specific bacteria and lower HNC risk. Studies also explored the fungal microbiome, revealing reduced diversity, especially with *Candida albicans* in HNC cases. However, a focused study on oral fungi's role in HNC risk is lacking. Addressing this, a comprehensive study within the NIH-AARP cohort delved into the associations between both

bacterial and fungal components of the oral microbiome and the risk of developing HNC <sup>[1]</sup>.

Oral cavity cancer (OCC) is a prevalent type of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, with a higher incidence in men. Risk factors include tobacco use, alcohol consumption, and human papillomavirus (HPV) infections <sup>[13]</sup>. The oral microbiome's dysbiosis, especially in the context of poor oral hygiene, tobacco, and alcohol use, is linked to OSCC development <sup>[12]</sup>. Standard treatments involve a combination of surgery, radiation, and/or chemotherapy. Recurrence poses a significant challenge, with a rate of 32.7%, impacting the 5-year survival rate <sup>[13]</sup>.

Oral cancer, the 11th most prevalent malignancy globally, has seen a slight overall decrease in incidence <sup>[5]</sup>. In 2020, there were 377,700 new cases of lip and oral cavity cancers worldwide, resulting in 177,700 deaths <sup>[10]</sup>. However, tongue cancer rates are on the rise, particularly among younger individuals. The occurrence and fatality of this cancer vary geographically. Over the past decade, a notable surge in the percentage of young patients, specifically those with tongue cancer, has been observed. Globally, smoking and alcohol consumption, along with DNA oncogenic viruses and habits like betel nut use, remain the primary risk factors for head and neck cancer <sup>[5]</sup>. Oral cancer is on the rise in developed nations, especially in Japan, with 7,000 new cases and 3,000 deaths yearly. Despite comprising only 2–3% of all cancers, oral squamous cell carcinoma significantly impacts the tongue. Treatment options include surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation, with reported survival rates of 60–80%, rising to 90% with early detection <sup>[4]</sup>. This cancer poses a significant health challenge with over 389,760 new cases and 193,696 deaths in 2017. Despite available treatments, the five-year survival rate is around 50%. Risk factors include smoking, alcohol, UV exposure, human papillomavirus, betel quid use, poor diet, periodontal disease, and cooking oil fumes. Global disparities and rising treatment costs in Asia, especially South Asia, necessitate effective health policies. The Global Burden of Disease Study 2019 guides policymakers <sup>[17]</sup>.

A study investigated the baseline oral microbiota profiles of nonsmoking Mexican American women in relation to all-cancer incidence. The hypothesis was that differences in oral microbiota diversity and composition would be evident among women who developed cancer, potentially serving as targets or markers for future studies and preventive interventions <sup>[9]</sup>. The oral microbiome, consisting of various microorganisms in the mouth, is thought to play a role in OSCC by metabolizing carcinogens and inducing inflammation <sup>[9]</sup>. Chronic inflammation, mediated by oral microorganisms, is implicated in

disease development, suggesting potential diagnostic biomarkers <sup>[16]</sup>. Recent studies using advanced sequencing technology have explored the oral microbial composition in cancer, revealing variations and a decrease in Firmicutes abundance <sup>[7]</sup>. The oral cavity harbours approximately 700 bacterial species playing a vital role in maintaining oral health. Recent studies suggest a consortium of microbes, rather than a single species, contributes to diseases like periodontal diseases. Oral cancer, primarily oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC), results from both genetic and environmental factors. Despite known risk factors, approximately 15% of oral cancer cases lack clear attributions. The oral microbiome, assessed through next-generation sequencing, has revealed associations with OSCC <sup>[8]</sup>.

Researchers have employed diverse technologies to investigate the correlation between microbiota and oral cancer, including pan-pathogen arrays, quantitative PCR, immunological staining, antibody detection, and fluorescence in situ hybridization. However, these methods either rely on bacterial culture or have limited throughput. Notably, the majority of the microbiota cannot be cultured, limiting the ability of these methods to provide comprehensive profiles of the oral microbiota. In contrast, high-throughput sequencing technology, independent of culture, enables the identification of thousands of microorganisms through partial sequencing of the 16S rRNA gene <sup>[15]</sup>.

Fanconi anaemia (FA) is a rare genetic disorder associated with chromosomal instability and impaired DNA damage repair, increasing the risk of head and neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCC). FA patients have a heightened susceptibility to oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC), even in the absence of typical cancer risk factors like tobacco and alcohol. The reasons behind this increased OSCC incidence in FA patients are not fully understood. While human papillomavirus (HPV) has been implicated in oropharyngeal cancer, its role in OSCC development in FA patients remains uncertain. Emerging evidence suggests the involvement of bacteria in cancer development, with certain oral species demonstrating diagnostic potential for OSCC identification <sup>[11]</sup>.

Despite therapeutic advances, OSCC's high mortality rate persists due to late diagnoses and frequent recurrences. The oral cavity hosts a diverse bacterial community, and the oral microbiome has been implicated in oral cancer through the production of carcinogens and proinflammatory responses. OSCC cases exhibit significant alterations in oral microflora, but these can vary by oral site and habits like betel quid chewing, tobacco, and alcohol use <sup>[14]</sup>.

The researchers are using spatial profiling technologies and single-cell RNA sequencing to map host-bacterial interactions within the tumour microenvironment. The findings highlight the contribution of the intertumoral microbiota to tumour heterogeneity, emphasizing the complexity of interactions between malignant and non-malignant cells in cancer <sup>[12]</sup>.

## **Head and neck cancer**

Head and neck cancers, primarily squamous cell carcinomas, typically originate in the mucosal surfaces of the head and neck, such as the mouth, throat, and voice box. Less common types can start in the salivary glands, sinuses, or muscles and nerves. These cancers may form in various regions, including the oral cavity (lips, tongue, gums, etc.), throat (nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx), voice box (larynx), paranasal sinuses, nasal cavity, and salivary glands. Cancers of the brain, eye, oesophagus, thyroid gland, and skin are not classified as head and neck cancers. Squamous cell carcinomas often spread locally or to the lymph nodes in the neck. In some cases, cancerous cells may be found in upper neck lymph nodes without evidence of a primary tumour, leading to a diagnosis of metastatic squamous cell carcinoma with an unknown primary site <sup>[18-20]</sup>.

Head and neck cancers represent about 4% of all cancer cases in the United States, being more prevalent in men and individuals over 50 years old. In 2021, over 68,000 new cases were estimated, with a higher likelihood of diagnosis involving the mouth, throat, or voice box. Less common are paranasal sinus and nasal cavity cancer, as well as salivary gland cancer <sup>[21]</sup>.

The treatment for head and neck cancer involves employing various methods, including surgery, radiation therapy, chemotherapy, targeted therapy, and immunotherapy. The specific treatment plan is personalized, taking into consideration factors such as the tumour's location, cancer stage, and the patient's age and overall health. Recent studies indicate that individuals with HPV-positive oropharyngeal tumours generally experience a more favourable prognosis and a higher likelihood of complete cure compared to those with HPV-negative tumours who undergo similar treatment. Current clinical trials are actively exploring the potential of less intensive treatment approaches, such as reduced radiation or immunotherapy, specifically for individuals with HPV-positive cancers <sup>[22]</sup>.

## **Oral cancer**

Oral cancer ranks as the sixth most prevalent malignancy globally <sup>[23]</sup>. In 2012, 300,000 individuals (2.1% of total cancer cases) were diagnosed with cancer of the oral cavity and lip, leading to 145,000 fatalities from this condition <sup>[24]</sup>.

Tobacco consumption, including smokeless tobacco, and heavy alcohol intake are widely acknowledged as major contributors to oral cancer development. Additionally, various potential risk factors such as chronic irritation, poor oral hygiene, viral infections, occupational exposure, malnutrition, low fruit and vegetable diets, and genetic factors have been suggested [25, 26]. The primary risk factors for squamous cell carcinoma, a prevalent form of oral cancer, are the combined use of tobacco and alcohol, exhibiting a synergistic effect. Cigarette smoke, containing over 60 carcinogens, poses a significant risk [27-30]. Specific tobacco-derived substances, such as N-nitrosamines like NNK and NNN, have been shown to induce cancer in experimental animals. These substances undergo metabolic activation, forming DNA-reactive metabolites that lead to DNA adducts, potentially causing harmful mutations in oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes. In certain regions like the Indian subcontinent, parts of Southeast Asia, and Taiwan, the use of betel quid containing areca nut and lime is strongly linked to an elevated risk of oral cancer [31-32].

Alcohol consumption is identified as an independent, dose-dependent risk factor for cancer development [33]. The process involves alcohol being initially oxidized to acetaldehyde by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH), with acetaldehyde categorized as a Group I carcinogen by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). Further metabolism to acetate by aldehyde dehydrogenase (ALDH) occurs, and any defects in these enzymes may impact alcohol-induced carcinogenesis [34]. Moreover, alcohol triggers basal cell proliferation, generates harmful free radicals affecting DNA, and hinders the body's nutrient breakdown and absorption, potentially fostering carcinogenesis [28, 29].

In addition to the well-established risks of tobacco use and alcohol abuse, there is a growing focus on the role of the human papillomavirus (HPV). Specifically, HPV-16 has been identified as a causative factor in the development of a specific subset of squamous cell carcinoma, particularly in the base of the tongue and the tonsillar region, particularly affecting younger individuals compared to those without HPV infection [35, 36]. The prevalence of HPV-positive oropharyngeal cancer varies globally, with rates of 56% in North America, 52% in Japan, 45% in Australia, 39% in Northern and Western Europe, 38% in Eastern Europe, 17% in Southern Europe, and 13% in the rest of the world [37].

### **Periodontal disease**

Periodontal diseases encompass conditions affecting the periodontium, including the gingiva, alveolar bone, cementum, and periodontal ligament.

Gingivitis, the mildest form, is prevalent in up to 90% of the population and involves inflammation due to bacterial accumulation, reversible with improved oral hygiene. Progressing beyond gingivitis, periodontitis becomes a chronic, irreversible inflammatory disease. Bacteria penetrate deeper tissues, prompting a host response that inadvertently leads to periodontium destruction, resulting in attachment loss and potential tooth loss [56-58]. The 2017 classification by the American Academy of Periodontology introduces three categories for periodontitis: necrotizing periodontal diseases, periodontitis, and periodontitis as a manifestation of systemic diseases. Necrotizing periodontal disease, often seen in immunosuppressed individuals like those with HIV, is characterized by rapid progression, gingival necrosis, bleeding, and pain. [59,60].

### **Periodontal disease and oral cancer**

In the 19th century, Rudolf Virchow pioneered the notion of a potential link between inflammation and cancer, observing leukocyte infiltration in tumour microenvironments and suggesting that chronic inflammation might propel cancer development [61]. The head and neck region undergoes genetic alterations induced by various factors like smoking, alcohol, and sunlight, disrupting the normal control of cell growth and contributing to cancer development [62]. Microorganisms have also been implicated in tumour growth, with gingival tissues, susceptible to oral microbial attacks, exhibiting immune-inflammatory responses that affect susceptibility to periodontal diseases [63-66]. Gingival keratinocytes play a role in producing immune response mediators and recognizing pathogen-associated molecular patterns through receptors such as toll-like receptors [67-69]. Periodontitis, linked to an elevated risk of systemic conditions and cancers, has various predisposing factors, including dental calculus, overhang restorations, smoking, nutrition, diabetes, age, and genetic alterations [70-72]. The evidence highlights the connection between chronic inflammation and the malignant transformation of oral epithelium, as seen in the reported malignant transformation of oral lichen planus, a chronic inflammatory lesion [65, 73-75]. Oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC), representing the majority of oral malignancies, is associated with risk factors such as tobacco, alcohol, betel quid ingestion, malnutrition, viral infections, and the oral microbiome [73-80].

### **Periodontitis and Oral Cancer: A Microbial Perspective**

Antony van Leeuwenhoek's late 17th-century discovery of the oral microbiome plays a pivotal role in inflammatory responses in the head and neck area, particularly the oral cavity [82]. Bacterial pathogens, notably

*Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans*, *P. gingivalis*, and *Tannerella forsythia*, contribute to periodontitis, with *P. gingivalis* considered a major causative microorganism<sup>[83, 84]</sup>. Oral health exhibits positive associations with autoimmune disorders and cancer risk, including links between periodontal pathogens and gastric precancerous lesions<sup>[85, 86]</sup>. Certain oral bacteria are associated with periodontitis, appendicitis, colorectal cancer, oesophageal cancer, colorectal carcinoma, and pancreatic cancer<sup>[87, 88]</sup>. *Fusobacterium nucleatum* and *P. gingivalis* are found in various cancers, such as oesophageal cancer, colorectal carcinoma, and pancreatic cancer<sup>[89-92]</sup>. Periodontal diseases show connections with non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), with tooth loss linked to the resolution of local oral inflammation and associated NHL risk<sup>[93-94]</sup>. Bone loss due to periodontitis is identified as a risk factor for oral cancer<sup>[95]</sup>. Oral pathogens, including streptococci, are isolated from cervical lymph nodes in oral cancer patients<sup>[96]</sup>. The association between *H. pylori* and oral cancer, along with its link with periodontitis, is suggested<sup>[97]</sup>. The oral microbiome's metabolism of alcohol and formation of acetaldehyde impact head and neck cancer risk, especially oral cancer<sup>[98]</sup>. The microbiome's role in cancer growth involves the interaction of multiple signalling pathways<sup>[99]</sup>.

### **Fanconi anaemia (FA) and oral cancer**

Fanconi anaemia (FA) stands as a rare genetic disorder affecting all three blood cell lines, leading to inherited bone marrow failure characterized by pancytopenia. This condition extends its impact to various organs, and its molecular basis involves a malfunction in the homologous recombination DNA repair pathway. It encompasses defects in proteins and enzymes crucial for repairing damaged DNA caused by factors like alkylating agents, irradiation, and cytotoxic drugs. Recognized as the inherited form of aplastic anaemia, FA has broader implications, shedding light on the understanding of bone marrow failure syndromes and chromosome fragility diseases. It is associated with congenital deformities and heightened susceptibility to haematological and solid tumours, typically manifesting in childhood with an average age of diagnosis at 7 years. The ongoing progress in molecular genetic studies contributes significantly to the comprehensive exploration of Fanconi anaemia<sup>[100]</sup>.

Fanconi anaemia (FA) is a complex genetic disorder characterized by congenital abnormalities, progressive bone marrow failure, and an elevated risk of acute myeloid leukaemia and solid tumours. The disease involves mutations in at least 23 genes, with FANCA (Fanconi anaemia complementation group A) being the most common, inherited in an autosomal recessive manner. These genes participate in a common cellular pathway



crucial for DNA repair, particularly in response to DNA interstrand crosslink repair, genomic stabilization, and regulation of downstream proteins. While haematological abnormalities typically emerge in childhood, FA patients are more prone to solid tumours in adulthood, particularly head and neck cancers, where the risk is significantly elevated. Tongue carcinomas are the most prevalent subsite in FA-related head and neck cancers. Managing these cases poses challenges due to potential pancytopenia, heightened sensitivity to chemotherapeutic agents, and abnormal toxicity to radiotherapy. The delicate balance between cancer treatment and FA-associated complications requires a multidisciplinary approach <sup>[100]</sup>.

### **Diversity of oral microbes in oral cancer patients vs. non-cancerous people**

The exploration into the intricate link between the oral microbiome and oral cancer, as investigated by Wu *et al.* (2023), Zhao *et al.* (2017), Takahashi *et al.* (2019), Yang *et al.* (2018), Yang *et al.* (2022), and Niño *et al.* (2022), unravels compelling facets of this association. In Wu *et al.*'s study, a prospective connection between the oral microbiome and head and neck cancer (HNC) is examined. Their findings suggest that a richer taxonomic alpha-diversity, the presence of oral fungi, and the abundance of specific microbial species, notably red- and orange-complex periodontal pathogens, might correlate with a diminished risk of HNC <sup>[1]</sup>. However, the study aptly acknowledges the imperative for broader investigations to substantiate these associations.

Zhao *et al.* (2017) hone in on the bacterial composition within oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC) surface lesions. Employing the PICRUST algorithm, they predict diverse bacterial functions and spotlight the enrichment of metabolic pathways related to Genetic Information Processing in cancer lesions. The alterations in composition, co-occurrence patterns, and gene functions, coupled with the identification of periodontitis-associated taxa in OSCC samples, accentuate the potential involvement of microbiomes in OSCC development <sup>[8]</sup>.

Takahashi *et al.* (2019) plunge into the oral microbiota's realm concerning OSCC, unravelling heightened diversity in bacterial communities within OSCC samples. Specific genera, such as *Neisseria*, *Veillonella*, *Streptococcus*, *Prevotella* 7, and *Haemophilus*, surface as potential microbial markers for oral cancer. The study unveils sex and the Chao 1 index as potential impact factors, underscoring the multifaceted nature of oral cancer <sup>[4]</sup>.

Yang *et al.* (2018) significantly contributes by delving into diverse

bacterial communities in OSCC patients. Their study aligns with the present investigation, emphasizing the intricate interplay between the oral microbiota and mutational changes in OSCC tumours. The categorization based on mutational signatures unravels distinctive clinicopathological parameters associated with different mutational clusters, enriching the comprehension of the varied etiological backgrounds of OSCC [7].

The study by Yang *et al.* (2022) employs high-throughput DNA sequencing to scrutinize the oral microbiota in individuals with oral tumours. Challenging certain prior findings, the analysis discloses greater species diversity in the tumorous group. Variations in the abundance of specific microbiomes, like *Aggregatibacter*, suggest potential implications for chronic periodontitis and oral cavity cancers. Functional analysis indicates upregulated genes related to signal transduction and bacterial chemotaxis, hinting at potential roles in bacterial survival and antitumor immunological effects. Reduced genes associated with replication and repair may signify compromised DNA repair mechanisms in tumorous patients [15].

Niño *et al.* (2022) delve into the intertumoral microbiota in OSCC and colorectal cancer (CRC) using advanced spatial-profiling technologies. Their study uncovers distinct microniches inhabited by bacterial communities associated with malignant cells. Specific bacterial taxa, including *Fusobacterium*, *Peptostreptococcus*, and *Bacteroides*, exhibit differential abundance, influencing tumour heterogeneity. The localized microbiota impact immune response, tumour vasculature, and the proliferation potential of cancer cells, emphasizing the non-random and highly organized distribution of the microbiota within tumours [6].

In synthesis, these studies collectively underscore the intricate role of the oral microbiome in oral cancer development, offering insights that may pave the way for targeted therapeutic interventions and enhanced diagnostic strategies. Further research is essential to validate and expand upon these findings, advancing our understanding of the nuanced interplay between microbial communities and oral cancer.

### **16S rRNA sequencing**

The application of 16S rRNA sequencing in the exploration of oral cancer and microbiome diversity has emerged as a crucial avenue, providing essential insights into the intricate microbial communities within the oral cavity. At a molecular level, the 16S rRNA gene, integral to bacterial ribosomes, acts as a distinctive marker, aiding in the identification and categorization of genetic variations among bacterial species.

In the realm of oral cancer detection, the importance of 16S rRNA sequencing is highlighted by its role in uncovering specific microbial signatures linked to oral tumours. Pivotal research conducted by Yang *et al.* (2022) <sup>[15]</sup> demonstrates how this sequencing technique enables the comparison of microbial profiles between tumorous and healthy oral samples, potentially leading to the identification of unique patterns or biomarkers indicative of oral cancer.

Shifting our focus to microbiome diversity studies, the robustness of 16S rRNA sequencing emerges as a powerful tool for characterizing the abundance and diversity of various bacterial taxa within the oral cavity. Seminal studies, exemplified by the work of Nancy J. Ames, *et al.* (2018) <sup>[102]</sup>, emphasize how the identification and quantification of diverse microbial species provide valuable insights into the complex structure of the microbial community. Such analyses significantly contribute to our understanding of how variations in the oral microbiome contribute to diverse oral health states, including oral cancers.

The procedural framework of 16S rRNA sequencing involves the extraction of DNA from oral samples, followed by the amplification of the 16S rRNA gene region using polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Subsequently, the amplified DNA undergoes sequencing, and the resultant sequences are compared to databases containing known bacterial 16S rRNA gene sequences. This methodology, as delineated by studies conducted by B Alraddadi *et al.*, 2013 <sup>[103]</sup>, offers a comprehensive overview of the microbial community structure, facilitating a meticulous analysis of the oral microbiome and its implications for oral health and disease.

Numerous research papers have delved into the application of 16S rRNA sequencing in oral cancer detection and the exploration of microbiome diversity, featuring significant contributions from researchers such as Wu *et al.* (2023), Saxena *et al.* (2022), Guerrero-Preston *et al.* (2016), Takahashi *et al.* (2019), Ghantous *et al.* (2017), Niño *et al.* (2022), Yang *et al.* (2018), Zhao *et al.* (2017), and others <sup>[1-17]</sup>. This collective body of work underscores the pivotal role of 16S rRNA sequencing in unravelling microbial associations, identifying risk factors, and exploring diagnostic potentials across various facets of oral health research.

### **CancerDetect for Oral & Throat cancer™ (CDOT)**

The research introduced CancerDetect for Oral & Throat cancer™ (CDOT), a groundbreaking non-invasive test designed to detect signs of oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC) and oropharyngeal squamous cell

carcinoma (OPSCC) in individuals at a heightened risk. By utilizing saliva samples from 1,175 participants, aged 50 or older or with a history of tobacco use, the study trained a computer program to identify specific markers associated with these cancers. Testing CDOT on 230 new samples, including individuals with OSCC, OPSCC, and negatives, yielded impressive results, showcasing 94% accuracy in identifying negatives, 90% sensitivity for OSCC, and 84.2% sensitivity for OPSCC. The significance lies in CDOT's simplicity and non-invasiveness, making it feasible for implementation in dentist offices, primary care centers, and cancer clinics. This breakthrough test has the potential to revolutionize cancer diagnosis by enabling early detection, ultimately saving lives, and substantially reducing healthcare costs. The FDA's recognition through breakthrough designation underscores the test's promising impact on healthcare practices <sup>[10]</sup>.

## **Discussion**

The symbiotic dance between the oral microbiome and the intricate landscape of head and neck cancer (HNC) has become a focal point of recent research, with numerous studies shedding light on the nuanced relationship <sup>[1]</sup>. The oral microbiome, a thriving community hosting approximately 700 bacterial species, emerges as a pivotal factor in unravelling the risk factors intricately associated with HNC, particularly within the context of periodontal disease <sup>[8]</sup>. Well-established risk factors, such as tobacco use, alcohol consumption, and human papillomavirus (HPV), further compound the intricacies of the HNC landscape <sup>[13]</sup>.

Oral cavity cancer (OCC), a prevalent manifestation of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, demonstrates a higher incidence in men, with recognized risk factors including tobacco use, alcohol consumption, and HPV infections <sup>[13]</sup>. Despite significant advancements in treatment modalities, such as surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy, the challenge of OCC recurrence persists, impacting the 5-year survival rate <sup>[13]</sup>. The global variation in the occurrence and fatality of oral cancer underscores the diverse risk factors involved, ranging from smoking and alcohol consumption to betel nut use, poor diet, and exposure to cooking oil fumes <sup>[17]</sup>.

The surge of oral cancer in developed nations, notably in Japan, underscores the urgency of effective health policies due to its substantial impact on both morbidity and mortality <sup>[4]</sup>. A recent comprehensive study within the NIH-AARP cohort has delved into the associations between bacterial and fungal components of the oral microbiome and the risk of developing HNC, revealing intriguing potential links that warrant further investigation <sup>[1]</sup>.

Periodontal diseases, spanning from gingivitis to chronic periodontitis, have been implicated in an elevated risk of oral cancer, elucidating the intricate relationship between inflammation and cancer development [65, 73-75]. The 2017 classification by the American Academy of Periodontology introduces three categories for periodontitis, accentuating the complex nature of these conditions [56-58].

Fanconi anaemia (FA), a rare genetic disorder, introduces a unique perspective into the discussion, as FA patients exhibit heightened susceptibility to oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC) even in the absence of traditional risk factors like tobacco and alcohol [11]. The involvement of bacteria in cancer development, especially certain oral species demonstrating diagnostic potential for OSCC identification, presents a novel avenue for exploration [11].

The diversity of oral microbes in cancer patients versus non-cancerous individuals, as elucidated by various studies, underscores the potential role of the oral microbiome in tumour development [1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 15]. Advanced spatial profiling technologies and single-cell RNA sequencing have provided insights into the highly organized distribution of the microbiota within tumours, emphasizing the complexity of interactions between malignant and non-malignant cells in cancer [12].

The application of 16S rRNA sequencing has become instrumental in unravelling microbial associations and identifying risk factors across various facets of oral health research, contributing significantly to our understanding of the oral microbiome [15, 102-103]. The groundbreaking non-invasive test, CancerDetect for Oral & Throat cancer™ (CDOT), showcases promising results in detecting signs of oral squamous cell carcinoma and oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinoma, offering a potential revolution in early cancer diagnosis [101].

In short, the discussion underscores the intricate connections between the oral microbiome, risk factors, and various forms of head and neck cancer. Ongoing research endeavours continue to unravel the complexities of this relationship, providing valuable insights that may shape future preventive strategies and diagnostic approaches. The references cited throughout this discussion highlight the wealth of scientific inquiry that underpins our current understanding of these complex interactions.

## **Conclusion**

In conclusion, the symbiotic interplay between the oral microbiome and the landscape of head and neck cancer (HNC) presents a complex relationship

that extends beyond conventional risk factors. The oral microbiome, housing a diverse community of approximately 700 bacterial species, assumes a pivotal role in elucidating nuanced risk factors associated with HNC, particularly in the context of periodontal disease. Established risk factors such as tobacco use, alcohol consumption, and human papillomavirus (HPV) compound the intricacies of HNC aetiology.

Oral cavity cancer (OCC), a prevalent manifestation of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, poses challenges despite advancements in treatment modalities. Recurrence significantly impacts the 5-year survival rate, and global variations in the occurrence and fatality of oral cancer underscore diverse risk factors, encompassing lifestyle choices and environmental exposures. The recent NIH-AARP cohort study provides a comprehensive exploration of the associations between bacterial and fungal components of the oral microbiome and the risk of developing HNC, unveiling potential links that warrant further investigation. Periodontal diseases, spanning from gingivitis to chronic periodontitis, underscore the intricate relationship between inflammation and cancer development.

Furthermore, unique perspectives such as Fanconi anaemia (FA) introduce novel dimensions to the discussion, revealing heightened susceptibility to oral squamous cell carcinoma in the absence of traditional risk factors. The diversity of oral microbes in cancer patients versus non-cancerous individuals, coupled with advanced spatial profiling technologies and single-cell RNA sequencing, highlights the highly organized distribution of the microbiota within tumours, emphasizing the complexity of interactions between malignant and non-malignant cells in cancer. Instrumental techniques like 16S rRNA sequencing contribute significantly to unravelling microbial associations and identifying risk factors in oral health research. Innovations such as the non-invasive CancerDetect for Oral & Throat cancer™ (CDOT) test showcase promising results in early cancer diagnosis, potentially revolutionizing diagnostic approaches. In summary, ongoing research endeavours continue to unveil the intricate connections between the oral microbiome, risk factors, and various forms of head and neck cancer, providing valuable insights for future preventive and diagnostic strategies in the dynamic realm of oral cancer.

## References

1. Wu, Z., *et al.* (2023). Oral microbiome and risk of incident head and neck cancer: A nested case-control study.
2. Saxena, R., *et al.* (2022). Assessing the Effect of Smokeless Tobacco

## Consumption on Oral Microbiome in Healthy and Oral Cancer Patients.

3. Guerrero-Preston, R., *et al.* (2016). 16S rRNA amplicon sequencing identifies microbiota associated with oral cancer, human papillomavirus infection, and surgical treatment.
4. Takahashi, Y., *et al.* (2019). Analysis of oral microbiota in Japanese oral cancer patients using 16S rRNA sequencing.
5. Ghantous, Y., *et al.* (2017). Global incidence and risk factors of oral cancer.
6. Galeano Niño, J. L., *et al.* (2022). Effect of the intratumoral microbiota on spatial and cellular heterogeneity in cancer.
7. Yang, S. F., *et al.* (2018). Compositional and functional variations of oral microbiota associated with the mutational changes in oral cancer.
8. Zhao, H., *et al.* (2017). Variations in oral microbiota associated with oral cancer.
9. Zhang, X., *et al.* (2020). Baseline Oral Microbiome and All-cancer Incidence in a Cohort of Nonsmoking Mexican American Women.
10. Mäkinen, A. I., *et al.* (2023). Salivary microbiome profiles of oral cancer patients analyzed before and after treatment.
11. Furquim, C. P., *et al.* (2017). The Salivary Microbiome and Oral Cancer Risk: a Pilot Study in Fanconi Anemia.
12. Granato, D. C., *et al.* (2021). Meta-omics analysis indicates the saliva microbiome and its proteins associated with the prognosis of oral cancer patients.
13. Lim, Y., *et al.* (2021). Chemoradiation therapy changes oral microbiome and metabolomic profiles in patients with oral cavity cancer and oropharyngeal cancer.
14. Su, S. C., *et al.* (2021). Oral microbial dysbiosis and its performance in predicting oral cancer.
15. Yang, J., *et al.* (2022). Variations in the oral microbiome and its predictive functions between tumorous and healthy individuals.
16. Delaney, C. (2023). Limitations of using 16S rRNA microbiome sequencing to predict oral squamous cell carcinoma.
17. Xie, L., *et al.* (2022). Burden of oral cancer in Asia from 1990 to 2019: Estimates from the Global Burden of Disease 2019 study.

18. National Cancer Institute. (2021). Head and neck cancer. <https://www.cancer.gov/types/head-and-neck/head-neck-fact-sheet>
19. Chow, L. Q. M. (2020). Head and neck cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 382(1), 60–72. doi:10.1056/NEJMra1715715.
20. Son, E., Panwar, A., Mosher, C. H., Lydiatt, D. (2018). Cancers of the major salivary gland. *Journal of Oncology Practice*, 14(2), 99–108.
21. Siegel, R. L., Miller, K. D., Fuchs, H. E., Jemal, A. (2021). Cancer statistics, 2021. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 71(1), 7–33.
22. Ang, K. K., Harris, J., Wheeler, R., *et al.* (2010). Human papillomavirus and survival of patients with oropharyngeal cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 363(1), 24–35.
23. Warnakulasuriya, S. (2009). Causes of oral cancer – An appraisal of controversies. *Br Dent J*, 207, 471–5.
24. Ferlay, J., Soerjomataram, I., Dikshit, R., *et al.* (2015). Cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012. *Int J Cancer*, 136, E359–86.
25. Mehanna, H., Paleri, V., West, C. M., Nutting, C. (2011). Head and neck cancer-part1: epidemiology, presentation, and preservation. *Clin Otolaryngol*, 36, 65–8.
26. Perry, B. J., *et al.* (2015). Sites of origin of oral cavity cancer in nonsmokers vs smokers: possible evidence of dental trauma carcinogenesis and its importance compared with human papillomavirus. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*, 141, 5–11.
27. Pelucchi, C., *et al.* (2006). Cancer risk associated with alcohol and tobacco use: focus on upper aero-digestive tract and liver. *Alcohol Res Health*, 29, 193–8.
28. Marttila, E., *et al.* (2013). Acetaldehyde production and microbial colonization in oral squamous cell carcinoma and oral lichenoid disease. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol*, 116, 61–8.
29. Feller, L., *et al.* (2013). Alcohol and oral squamous cell carcinoma. *SADJ*, 68, 176–80.
30. Pfeifer, G. P., *et al.* (2002). Tobacco smoke carcinogens, DNA damage and p53 mutations in smoking-associated cancers. *Oncogene*, 21, 7435–51.
31. Xue, J., Yang, S., Seng, S. (2014). Mechanisms of Cancer Induction by Tobacco-Specific NNK and NNN. *Cancers (Basel)*, 6, 1138–56.



32. Hecht, S. S. (1999). DNA adduct formation from tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines. *Mutat Res*, 424, 127–42.
33. Goldstein, B. Y., *et al.* (2010). Alcohol consumption and cancers of the oral cavity and pharynx from 1988 to 2009: an update. *Eur J Cancer Prev*, 19, 431–65.
34. Scully, C. (2011). Oral cancer aetiopathogenesis; past, present and future aspects. *Med Oral Patol Oral Cir Bucal*, 16, e306–11.
35. D' Souza, G., *et al.* (2007). Case-control study of human papillomavirus and oropharyngeal cancer. *N Engl J Med*, 356, 1944–56.
36. Chaturvedi, A. K., *et al.* (2008). Incidence trends for human papillomavirus-related and -unrelated oral squamous cell carcinomas in the United States. *J Clin Oncol*, 26, 612–9.
37. Gillison, M. L., *et al.* (2014). Eurogin Roadmap: comparative epidemiology of HPV infection and associated cancers of the head and neck and cervix. *Int J Cancer*, 134, 497–507.
38. Do, L. G., *et al.* (2014). Oral mucosal lesions: Findings from the Australian National Survey of Adult Oral Health. *Aust Dent J*, 59, 114–20.
39. Dhanuthai, K., *et al.* (2016). A multicenter study of oral malignant tumors from Thailand. *J Oral Maxillofac Pathol*, 20, 462–6.
40. BenNasir, E., *et al.* (2015). Oral cancer in Libya and development of regional oral cancer registries: A review. *Saudi Dent J*, 27, 171–9.
41. Subhashraj, K., *et al.* (2009). Primary malignant tumors of orofacial region at Benghazi, Libya: A 17 years review. *Cancer Epidemiol*, 33, 332–6.
42. Anis, R., *et al.* (2013). Oral cancer in the UAE: A multicenter, retrospective study. *Libyan J Med*, 8, 21782.
43. Ajayi, O. F., *et al.* (2007). Primary malignant neoplasms of orofacial origin: A retrospective review of 256 cases in a Nigerian tertiary hospital. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*, 36, 403–8.
44. Chidzonga, M. M. (2006). Oral malignant neoplasia: A survey of 428 cases in two Zimbabwean hospitals. *Oral Oncol*, 42, 177–83.
45. Sargeran, K., *et al.* (2006). Malignant oral tumors in Iran: Ten-year analysis on patient and tumor characteristics of 1042 patients in Tehran. *J Craniofac Surg*, 17, 1230–3.

46. Khan, A. R., *et al.* (2008). Case series analysis of oral cancer and their risk factors. *Malaysia Dent J*, 29, 46–50.
47. Rawashdeh, M. A., *et al.* (2004). Malignant oral tumors in Jordanians, 1991-2001. A descriptive epidemiological study. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*, 33, 183–8.
48. Ariyoshi, Y., *et al.* (2008). Epidemiological study of malignant tumors in the oral and maxillofacial region: Survey of member institutions of the Japanese Society of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgeons, 2002. *Int J Clin Oncol*, 13, 220–8.
49. Singh, M. P., *et al.* (2016). Clinico-epidemiological study of oral squamous cell carcinoma: A tertiary care centre study in North India. *J Oral Biol Craniofac Res*, 6, 31–4.
50. Shenoi, R., *et al.* (2012). Demographic and clinical profile of oral squamous cell carcinoma patients: A retrospective study. *Indian J Cancer*, 49, 21–6.
51. Howell, R. E., *et al.* (2003). Trends in the incidence of oral cancer in Nova Scotia from 1983 to 1997. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod*, 95, 205–12.
52. Brandizzi, D., *et al.* (2008). Clinical features and evolution of oral cancer: A study of 274 cases in Buenos Aires, Argentina. *Med Oral Patol Oral Cir Bucal*, 13, E544–8.
53. Fierro-Garibay, C., *et al.* (2011). Prevalence of biopsied oral lesions in a department of oral surgery. *J Clin Exp Dent*, 3, e73–7.
54. Bhattacharjee, A., *et al.* (2006). Prevalence of head and neck cancers in the north east-an institutional study. *Indian J Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*, 58, 15–9.
55. Kruaysawat, W., *et al.* (2010). Survival time and prognostic factors of oral cancer in Ubon Ratchathani Cancer Center. *J Med Assoc Thai*, 93, 278–84.
56. Pihlstrom BL, Michalowicz BS, Johnson NW (2005). "Periodontal diseases." *Lancet*. Nov 19;366(9499):1809-20. [PubMed].
57. Kinane DF, Stathopoulou PG, Papapanou PN (2017). "Periodontal diseases." *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. Jun 22;3:17038. [PubMed].
58. Highfield J (2009). "Diagnosis and classification of periodontal disease." *Aust Dent J*. Sep;54 Suppl 1:S11-26. [PubMed].

59. Babay N, Alshehri F, Al Rowis R (2019). "Major highlights of the new 2017 classification of periodontal and peri-implant diseases and conditions." *Saudi Dent J.* Jul;31(3):303-305. [PMC free article] [PubMed].
60. Todescan S, Nizar R (2013). "Managing patients with necrotizing ulcerative periodontitis." *J Can Dent Assoc.* [PubMed].
61. Cao X, Xu J (2019). "Insights into inflammasome and its research advances in cancer." *Tumori*;105:456-64. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
62. van Elsland D, Neeffjes J (2018). "Bacterial infections and cancer." *EMBO Rep*;19:pii: e46632. [Google Scholar].
63. Bose M, Mukherjee P (2019). "Role of Microbiome in Modulating Immune Responses in Cancer." [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
64. Luan X, Zhou X, Naqvi A, Francis M, Foyle D, Nares S, *et al* (2018). "MicroRNAs and immunity in periodontal health and disease." *Int J Oral Sci*;10:24. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
65. Irani S (2017). "Orofacial Bacterial Infectious Diseases: An Update." *J Int Soc Prev Commun Dentistry*;7:S61-s7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
66. Irani S (2016). "Oral Health and Related Factors: An Update." *J Int Oral Health*;8:140-4. [Google Scholar].
67. Kasnak G, Kononen E, Syrjanen S, *et al* (2019). "NFE2L2/NRF2, OGG1, and cytokine responses of human gingival keratinocytes against oxidative insults of various origin." *Mol Cell Biochem*;452:63-70. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
68. Liu J, Du X, Chen J, Hu L, Chen L (2013). "The induction expression of human  $\beta$ -defensins in gingival epithelial cells and fibroblasts." *Archiv Oral Biol*;58:1415-21. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
69. Song B, Zhang Y, Chen L, *et al* (2017). "The role of Toll-like receptors in periodontitis." *Oral Dis*;23:168-80. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
70. Jensen A, Ladegaard Gronkjaer L, Holmstrup P, *et al* (2018). "Unique subgingival microbiota associated with periodontitis in cirrhosis patients." *Sci Rep*;8:10718. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
71. Correa JD, Fernandes GR (2019). "Oral microbial dysbiosis linked to

- worsened periodontal condition in rheumatoid arthritis patients." *Sci Rep*;9:8379. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
72. Knight ET, Liu J, Seymour GJ, *et al* (2016). "Risk factors that may modify the innate and adaptive immune responses in periodontal diseases." *Periodontology*;71:22-51. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  73. Irani S, Monsef Esfahani A, Ghorbani A (2016). "Dysplastic change rate in cases of oral lichen planus: A retrospective study of 112 cases in an Iranian population." *J Oral Maxillofac Pathol*;20:395-9. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  74. Irani S (2016). "Pre-Cancerous Lesions in the Oral and Maxillofacial Region: A Literature Review with Special Focus on Etiopathogenesis." *Iran J Pathol*;11:303-22. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  75. Irani S (2010). "Squamous Cell Carcinoma arising in Oral Lichen Planus." *DJH*;1:1-6. [Google Scholar].
  76. Irani S (2016). "Distant metastasis from oral cancer: A review and molecular biologic aspects." *J Int Soc Prevent Commun Dentistry*;6:265-71. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  77. Irani S (2016). "miRNAs Signature in Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma Metastasis: A Literature Review." *J Dentistry (Shiraz, Iran)*;17:71-83. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  78. Irani S, Monsef Esfahani A, Bidari Zerehpoush F (2013). "Detection of *Helicobacter pylori* in Oral Lesions." *J Dental Res Dental Clin Dental Prospects*;7:230-7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  79. Karpinski TM (2019). "Role of Oral Microbiota in Cancer Development." *Microorganisms*;7:1. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  80. Irani S (2019). "New insights into Oral Cancer: Risk factors and Prevention: A Review of Literature." *Int J Prevent Med*. [In press]. [Google Scholar].
  81. Soussan Irani (2020). "Periodontitis and oral cancer - current concepts of the etiopathogenesis." *Oncol Rev*;14(1):465. [PubMed].
  82. Manjunatha BS, Mahajan A, Mody BM, Shah V (2015). "Adenomatoid Odontogenic Tumor (AOT) Arising from a Dentigerous Cyst: Literature Review and Report of a Case." *J Maxillofac Oral Surg*;14:393-7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  83. How KY, Song KP, Chan KG (2016). "*Porphyromonas gingivalis*: An

- Overview of Periodontopathic Pathogen below the Gum Line." *Front Microbiol*;7:53. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
84. Asteriou E, Gkoutzourelas A, Mavropoulos A, *et al* (2018). "Curcumin for the Management of Periodontitis and Early ACPA-Positive Rheumatoid Arthritis: Killing Two Birds with One Stone." *Nutrients*;10:7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  85. Julkunen A, Heikkinen AM, Soder B (2017). "Autoimmune Diseases and Oral Health: 30-Year Follow-Up of a Swedish Cohort." *Dent J (Basel)*;6:1. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  86. Salazar CR, Sun J, Li Y, *et al* (2013). "Association between selected oral pathogens and gastric precancerous lesions." *PLoS One*;8:e51604. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  87. Cordero OJ, Varela-Calvino R (2018). "Oral hygiene might prevent cancer." *Heliyon*;4:e00879. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  88. Shin JM, Luo T, Kamarajan P, *et al* (2017). "Microbial Communities Associated with Primary and Metastatic Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma - A High Fusobacterial and Low Streptococcal Signature." *Sci Rep*;7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  89. Binder Gallimidi A, Fischman S, Revach B, *et al* (2015). "Periodontal pathogens *Porphyromonas gingivalis* and *Fusobacterium nucleatum* promote tumor progression in an oral-specific chemical carcinogenesis model." *Oncotarget*;6:22613-23. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  90. Gao S, Li S, Ma Z, *et al* (2016). "Presence of *Porphyromonas gingivalis* in esophagus and its association with the clinicopathological characteristics and survival in patients with esophageal cancer." *Infect Agents Cancer*;11:3. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  91. Fukugaiti MH, Ignacio A, Fernandes MR, *et al* (2015). "High occurrence of *Fusobacterium nucleatum* and *Clostridium difficile* in the intestinal microbiota of colorectal carcinoma patients." *Braz J Microbiol*;46:1135-40. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
  92. Fan X, Alekseyenko AV, Wu J, Peters BA (2018). "Human oral microbiome and prospective risk for pancreatic cancer: a population-based nested case-control study." *Gut*;67:120-7. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].

93. Bertrand KA, Shingala J, Evens A, *et al* (2017). "Periodontal disease and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in the Health Professionals Follow-Up Study." *Int J Cancer J*;140:1020-6. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
94. Chen QL, Zeng XT, Luo ZX, *et al* (2016). "Tooth loss is associated with increased risk of esophageal cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis with dose-response analysis." *Sci Rep*;6:18900. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
95. Michaud DS, Fu Z, Shi J, Chung M (2017). "Periodontal Disease, Tooth Loss, and Cancer Risk." *Epidemiol Rev*;39:49-58. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
96. Sakamoto H, Naito H, Ohta Y, *et al* (1999). "Isolation of bacteria from cervical lymph nodes in patients with oral cancer." *Archiv Oral Biol*;44:789-93. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
97. Dayama A, Srivastava V, Shukla M, *et al* (2011). "Helicobacter pylori and oral cancer: possible association in a preliminary case control study." *Asian Pacific J Cancer Prevent*;12:1333-6. [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
98. Lachenmeier DW, Monakhova YB (2011). "Short-term salivary acetaldehyde increase due to direct exposure to alcoholic beverages as an additional cancer risk factor beyond ethanol metabolism." *J Exp Clin Cancer Res*;30:3. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
99. Whisner CM, Athena Aktipis C (2019). "The Role of the Microbiome in Cancer Initiation and Progression: How Microbes and Cancer Cells Utilize Excess Energy and Promote One Another's Growth." *Curr Nutr Rep*;8:42-51. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [Google Scholar].
100. Fanconi Anemia *et al.*, Jenish Bhandari (2022). StatPearls.
101. Guruduth Banavar *et al.* (2023). "Detecting salivary host and microbiome RNA signature for aiding diagnosis of oral and throat cancer."
102. Nancy J. Ames, *et al.* (2018). "The Human Microbiome and Understanding the 16S rRNA Gene in Translational Nursing Science." HHS Author Manuscripts. [PubMed].
103. B Alraddadi *et al.* (2013). "Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol." *Summer*; 24(2): 85–88. doi: 10.1155/2013/747145.



## **Chapter - 2**

### **Foodomics and Its Analytical Techniques**

#### **Authors**

**Sudipa Mukherjee**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

**Priyankar Pal**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India





# Chapter - 2

## Foodomics and Its Analytical Techniques

Sudipa Mukherjee and Priyankar Pal

### Abstract

This study on "Foodomics" highlights the practical applications of contemporary analytical methods like mass spectrometry, nanotechnology, and green analytical chemistry in the foodomics sector. Additionally, the study provides useful information for comprehending genomic technology and its use in food analysis, or "foodomics." There are four main categories of omic technology under research. Food samples intended for human consumption can now be quickly and accurately analysed thanks to the use of omic technology. This study offers a novel approach to the current analysis and research on Foodomics, where some factors have been identified and require further attention using highlighting methodologies. On the basis of a few research articles, a more thorough analysis has also been conducted, and references have been included. Additionally, the study will contribute to our understanding of the three primary procedures that must be followed in the foodomics sector. With the help of these processing studies, we will be able to successfully meet needs while implementing some simple yet effective changes to food analysis and data collection. We will also be able to handle the numerous focused applications that are based on them going forward without endangering the biodiversity population.

**Keywords:** Foodomics, Food quality, Safety, Human health

### Introduction to OMICS and FOODOMICS

Let us first comprehend the term "OMICS". "OMICS" can be defined as examining and evaluating huge amounts of data that reflects the function and structure of a particular biological system to a certain degree which has considerably revolutionized and evolved the diverse methodologies through which biological systems are investigated. The four basic types of OMIC studies include – Genomics, Transcriptomics, Proteomics and Metabolomics. This OMIC technology allows an analytical approach to identify, describe and measure the functionality of large numbers of biological molecules as found

with complex samples. This technology thereafter can be said to be an advanced technology that includes

The data generation on various biological effects can be said to be quite expeditious and profitable comparatively.

Analysis of multiple biological pathways in a concurrent manner.

Evaluation of alteration to biological pathways ahead of any changes occurring in toxicological endpoints that are traditional in nature.

OMIC technology and studies is of great relevance in recent years providing with the qualitative and quantitative information at various medical, industrial, diagnostic and consumed food packaging or preserving fields.

Foodomics - It is an emerging interdisciplinary field, combining advanced analytical techniques with bioinformatics to comprehensively study the composition of biomolecular patterns and apprehend the data based on the quality and safety of food. This holistic approach integrates genomics, proteomics, metabolomics and other omics technologies to unravel the complex relationships between food components and their impact on human health.

As an innovative tool, Foodomics aims to enhance food safety, traceability and nutritional value, contributing to the evolution of personalized nutrition and a deeper understanding of the food being consumed by the human population.

### **Novelty of the article**

The novelty of this article brings up the average technological issues that obstacles the pathway of carrying out food analysis based on the foodomics technology and its variant applicants.

Comparing the existing analysis and research, one regard of challenge with certain factors is to be considered.

This analytical test that actually stays in food safety, is to give dependable outcomes regard to official rules in the quickest period of time without impeding technique properties like recuperation, exactness, awareness, selectivity and particularity. Carrying out the analysis with low cost effective equipments based on modern technology and data analysing system. In order to meet the needs of the consumer, plenty of room for creating more suitable analytical techniques seems necessary for the identification of allergens within the food variants as craved by consumer protection and law enforcement

Miniaturized systems and their applications are to be worked upon, for

supporting its growth and usage in food analysis. The development of multidimensional techniques, also require highly trained personnel who can implicate their knowledge and skills to offer simpler and more rapid analysis and its performed results.

The study of bringing up more designated methods needs to be built up for emission of the food-associated viruses in the analytical pathway. More powerful, sensitive as well as rapid analytical methodologies need to show up for the detection of diverse antibiotics, residues of pharmaceutical nature, nano-materials, coccidiostats or emerging groups of marine biotoxins. The use of analytical chemistry techniques and methodologies that minimise or remove solvents, reagents, preservatives, and other chemicals that pose a risk to human health or the environment is known as "green analytical chemistry," and it can be applied to food analysis to enable faster and more energy-efficient analysis without sacrificing the performance technology requirements.

To compare the current approaches in a meaningful way, standardised test procedures are required. To learn more about the potential effects of various nanomaterials on food safety, further toxicological research on these materials is necessary. Despite the advancements in foodomics technology, confirmatory solutions are still required to address new issues that may arise, such as food matrix interferences or food processing, which may not affect allergenicity but can hinder the identification of allergens. To achieve the objectives of the new green era, a number of strategies can be used, including miniaturisation or the use of solventless techniques, new and cleaner separation techniques combined with chemometrics, and greening sample preparation techniques via the use of new green solvents.

The study of this article will focus on better understanding of the roles of food compounds at the molecular level for the rational design of strategies to manipulate cell functions through various analytical technologies that can be carried out on a non-hazardous level, with personnel skills, relevance of data and its accuracy, low cost - high state equipment system :to impact on the results received in the disciplinary field of Foodomics, keeping their nutritional domains intact. The study of foodomics on a higher level is required in highlighting the methodological difficulties in the analysing system, understanding it and coming up with an approach to solving them. The approach needs a high degree of complementary knowledge in different fields such as - Analytical Chemistry, Bioinformatics and Encoded Molecular Patterns of Food Samples. This study will henceforth impart the knowledge in the field of foodomics with its required improvisations in the analytical

systems, to meet the needs on a faster productivity rate with the minimum cost-baring funds and implication of high skill power along with enhanced data.

### **A wider approach on Foodomics**

Since 2009, when the first international conference was conducted in Cesena, Italy, foodomics has drawn the attention of scientists from many cultural backgrounds (foodomics.eu). The aim of the conference was to foster a multidisciplinary atmosphere in which experts in the field of omics sciences were asked to contribute to the comprehensive definition of food and explore potential avenues for using this perspective within the nutrition profession

Food is a very complicated composition, and because of its complexity, it cannot be defined by using only a few carefully chosen ingredients. Furthermore, the traditional definition of it, which is determined by a compositional study, is frequently impacted by the extraction techniques, which may not accurately reflect the physiological milieu in which the molecules will become bioavailable. In reality, some chemical features may be highlighted more than others when focusing on specific ingredients or preparation techniques, even if the latter may be more significant from the standpoint of food-human interaction and health. On the other hand, when we concentrate just on how certain nutrients affect predetermined metabolic pathways, we run the danger of overlooking how the entire diet affects the human body. Foodomics rises to the challenge of achieving this goal by providing a richer definition of the food-human relationship for both parties in order to overcome this barrier.

Therefore, foodomics is not the nutrition science equivalent of nutrigenomics in nutrition science. The comprehensive, high-throughput method known as "foodomics" is used to apply food science to better human nutrition.

In the post-genomic era, foodomics—a discipline that studies the food and nutrition domains through the application of advanced omics technologies to improve consumer well-being, health, and confidence—was born out of the chance to combine and integrate state-of-the-art analytical platforms and data processing systems. In the intervening years, this field has quickly developed, and scholars are working to satisfy customer demands for food traceability, sustainability, quality, safety, and integrity. It is essential to present credible data on the ways by which food can support human health. (Daniela Braconi, Giulia Bernardini, Lia Millucci, Annalisa Santucci,2018)

It is believed that foodomics examines the food domain in conjunction

with the nutrition domain, using the same cutting-edge omics technologies on various samples and combining all findings to provide a comprehensive picture that enables the enhancement of health and well-being.

Food quality assurance prior to sale is a necessary requirement meant to safeguard the interests of consumers. Similarly, it is also essential for fostering ongoing advancements in sensory and nutritional qualities. Recent studies by food researchers that concentrate on the use of "foodomics" have made a contribution in this area. Sophisticated technology is needed to extract a great deal of information from the complex matrix of these meals in order to determine how suitable they are for ingestion. The significance of the findings may pave the way for a thorough overhaul of the majority of traditional analytical procedures, together with the addition of novel methods that provide a deeper comprehension of the biochemical events taking place in the particular kind of food sample.

(Rubén Agregán, Noemí Echeagaray, Asad Nawaz, Christophe Hano, 2021)

The globalisation of the food chain and shifts in contemporary consumer tastes present new problems for the food chain, food safety, and food processing industries. Furthermore, a barrier to the effective worldwide management of food safety is created by human mistake in food handling, climate change, and the steady rise in microbial resistance. Therefore, it is necessary to design, validate, and put into practice quick, sensitive, and precise procedures for evaluating food safety. (D Josić, Ž Peršurić, D Rešetar, T Martinović, L Saftić, S Kraljević Pavelić, 2017)

Although conventional food testing facilities relied on chemical examination of the food samples, new developments in the field of omics enable understanding of changes in the food sample at the transcriptome, metabolome, and genome levels. In addition to guaranteeing food quality, these approaches aid in food safety procedures by detecting food deterioration and detecting adulteration. To ensure the avoidance of food-borne infections and illnesses, several criteria are crucial. Additionally, foodomics aids in the profiling of a food sample for all of its macro and micro elements, in determining the function and metabolism of food, in the safety and traceability of food, and in determining the role of nutraceuticals and functional foods in human health. With change in food habits and food culture, increased transportation of food processing, storage and the quality of food is always a major concern. (Malathi Srinivasan, 2020)

In this way, as well, classic research methods are entering a new era, as

their combination with bioinformatics tools is shedding fresh insight on the results of experiments. Optimizing algorithms for statistical studies including the genome, proteome, and metabolome is essential to effectively use the potentials presented by the OMICS data. This is especially true for NMR, which offers spectrum data that, when taken as a whole, might be regarded as the sample's molecular profile and, therefore, can reflect the whole metabolome that is present in the sample. Several applications of NMR metabolomics, a very recent modernized approach, represent the opportunity to describe heterogeneity among food sources by looking at the effect of different production practices on the whole metabolic pattern, despite of focusing only on specific metabolites (Savorani *et al.* 2010; Picone *et al.* 2011a, b).

Food goods may be purposefully replaced, fully or partially, with less expensive, lower-quality alternatives, or they may be mistakenly mislabeled due to incidental mistakes. Not only is it important to combat financial fraud, but food product adulteration is also a serious safety risk. Examining the particular applications pertaining to food quality and, in certain cases, food authenticity is also essential. Additionally, it has been reported that proteomic technologies have been used to evaluate culinary authenticity in a variety of food types. Fish and shellfish products are among the most traded food commodities globally. Classical protein electrophoretic techniques have been used for authentication of other food commodities, such as legumes and ginseng herbs. (Ignacio Ortea, Gavin O'Connor, Alain Maquet, 2020).

The so-called postgenomic era began with the virtually complete sequencing of the human genome at the start of the twenty-first century, made possible by the remarkable analytical advancements made at the close of the twentieth century. Developments in methodology and analytical tools that were unimaginable just a few decades ago are now possible because of these advancements. Historically, the biotechnological or biochemical fields have been the first to apply these remarkable advancements, frequently in connection with pharmaceutical, medical, or clinical requirements. An excellent strategy to reward the efforts behind any novel analytical discovery is to take into account the enormous sums of money dedicated to these research domains when choosing the subject in which a new analytical method might be investigated. Consequently, analytical chemists and equipment businesses have often targeted the biotech, pharmaceutical, and clinical related sectors first. As a result, food analysis is now marginalised and associated with the application of more conventional analytical techniques. The borders between the many academic domains are getting increasingly hazy these days,

opening up amazing opportunities in the developing multidisciplinary sectors like food and health. As a result, researchers in food science and nutrition are being pushed to move from classical methodologies to more advanced strategies, usually borrowing methods well established in medical, pharmacological, and/or biotechnology research. (Alejandro Cifuentes,2015). Foods' chemical composition is severely impacted throughout the production and storage stages. Because of their incredibly complex process, a variety of high sensitivity and throughput technologies have been used in the evaluation of the quality decline. Foodomics-based approaches integrated multiple strategies that allow comprehensive characterization of the components of horticultural, meat, fish and seafood as well as milk and dairy products, and improve the understanding of potential mechanisms and molecules related to the quality traits to produce high-quality food products. (Rong Zhang, Wei Jia, Lin Shi,2023)

This recent outgrowing field of foodomics has grabbed the attention to be worked upon and implement its analytical procedures in the food and industrial beverages world.

**Foodomics:-** A new approach in food safety and quality safety

A fresh and contemporary perspective on food safety and quality as well as human health was made possible by advancements in analytical techniques in the fields of food science and technology. The term "foodomics" was recently developed and refers to the combination of pertinent omics disciplines. To date, the biological and medical sectors have seen substantial use of component omics techniques. Scientists studying food and nutrition have recently shown an interest in these omics studies.

Foodomics is an effective method for identifying the molecular components and nutrients in food. In recent times, several studies in the field of food science have been driven by the use of analytical methods from various omics disciplines, including proteomics, metabolomics, lipidomics, nutrigenomics, metagenomics, and transcriptomics. Several scholarly articles discuss the application of several omics technologies alone or in combination, not only for food ingredient analysis but also for food authenticity and food safety and quality assessment. It is clear that the use of cutting-edge analytical methods in omics research has given scientists studying food and nutrition science a wider viewpoint.

Consumers' concerns about the safety and composition of the food they eat have coincided with the growth of analytical tools and techniques in the field of food science. Food analysts must overcome increasingly difficult



problems that call for the use of the greatest science and technology available in order to adequately respond to the growing needs of customers. The transportation of food and associated raw materials around the world, together with the so-called globalisation, are largely to blame for this complexity. These factors are also causing contamination incidents to spread globally. One other challenge is the fact that many goods have several processing ingredients that are transported from different regions of the world and share manufacturing lines and storage rooms. Because of this, it's more important than ever to ensure the food's safety, quality, and traceability.

Traditionally, and still today, the primary objective of food analysis has been to guarantee food safety. Food labs are under pressure to replace their antiquated methods with cutting-edge analytical techniques in order to fulfil this objective and provide a sufficient response to the increasing demand on a worldwide scale. In addition, food laboratories have been significantly impacted by the Montreal Protocol, the Nutrition Labelling and Education Act in the United States, and new European standards in the EU. Consequently, quality control labs, regulatory bodies, and food scientists are increasingly searching for more potent, cheaper, and cleaner analytical techniques. These requirements have raised the need for more advanced equipment and suitable techniques that can improve both the quality and quantity of data while boosting the analysis's sensitivity, specificity, accuracy, and/or speed.

In addition to these fundamental factors, analytical chemistry is going to be important for a lot of other dietary qualities. A few examples include determining how food production, processing, preparation, and use affect nutrient content, the generation of toxic contaminants, and the inactivation of naturally occurring toxins; adhering to food and trade laws that guarantee food safety and traceability; spotting adulteration and product tampering; characterising the chemical composition of foods; researching food morphology, structure, or surface; analysing physical, physicochemical, thermal, or microbiological properties; assessing sensory attributes, etc. The processing, acceptability, safety, and quality of food will all be significantly impacted by these characteristics. Relevant issues in food analysis studied by modern omic analytical techniques include:-

Foods for prevention of disease progression

Ensuring safety, quality and traceability globally of food

Identification of chemical, biochemical and biological food contaminants

Determination of changes in genetically modified foods

Identification of new biomarkers to confirm the quality and authenticity of food The main four omic studies in the field of foodomics includes :-

- 1. Food Genomics:** It is the study of the DNA and associated genomic features of foods to enhance nutrition, safety and sustainability. It involves applying genomic technologies to improve food production and quality, ensuring food production and quality which reassures better health outcomes and environmental management.
- 2. Food Proteomics:** It involves analyzing the protein content of foods to understand their nutritional value, allergenic potential, and quality. This approach helps in improving food safety and developing functional foods tailored to specific health needs.
- 3. Food Metabolomics:** It is the comprehensive study of small molecule metabolites found in food, providing insights into food quality, nutritional value, and the impact on human health. It plays a crucial role in identifying biomarkers for food authentication and understanding diet-disease relationships.
- 4. Food Transcriptomics:** It examines the RNA transcripts present in foods, offering insights into gene expression patterns that influence food development, quality, and safety. This approach aids in understanding how genetic modifications and environmental factors impact food characteristics and nutritional content.

### **Implementation of Mass Spectrometry in Foodomics**

Mass spectrometry (MS) plays a pivotal role in foodomics technology, offering sensitive and precise analytical capabilities for studying the complex composition of foods at the molecular level. Here's how it is applied in foodomics:

**Identification of Components:** MS can identify and quantify thousands of chemicals in food, including proteins, lipids, metabolites, and contaminants, with high specificity and sensitivity.

**Food Safety and Contaminant Analysis:** It is instrumental in detecting foodborne pathogens, pesticides, toxins, and other harmful contaminants, ensuring food safety.

**Nutritional Analysis:** MS helps in the analysis of vitamins, minerals, and other nutrients, providing detailed information on the nutritional content of foods.

**Flavour and Aroma Compounds:** The technique is used to identify volatile and non-volatile compounds responsible for the flavour and aroma of

food products, important for food quality and consumer preference.

**Food Authenticity and Adulteration:** Mass spectrometry can authenticate food origins and detect adulteration, protecting consumers and ensuring compliance with labelling regulations.

**Metabolomics, Proteomics, and Lipidomics:** In these areas of foodomics, MS is a key tool for profiling the wide range of metabolites, proteins, and lipids in foods, which can affect health, taste, and nutritional value.

Overall, mass spectrometry's versatility and powerful analytical capabilities make it indispensable in the advancement of foodomics, contributing to safer, healthier, and higher quality food products.

### **Implementation of Nanotechnology in Foodomics**

Nanotechnology in foodomics technology represents an innovative frontier that significantly enhances the analysis, modification, and improvement of food attributes. This integration offers profound advancements in food science and nutrition, leveraging the unique properties of materials at the nanoscale. Here are several key applications:

**Enhanced Sensing and Detection:** Nanomaterials, due to their high surface area and reactivity, are used in the development of sensitive biosensors for detecting pathogens, contaminants, and toxins in food, ensuring safety and quality with greater efficiency and lower detection limits than traditional methods.

**Targeted Nutrient Delivery:** Nanocarriers can encapsulate nutrients, enhancing their stability, bioavailability, and targeted delivery within the human body. This is particularly valuable for fortifying foods with vitamins, minerals, and other essential compounds without altering taste or appearance.

**Food Packaging:** Nanotechnology is applied in food packaging materials to improve barrier properties, mechanical strength, and shelf life. Nanocomposites and nanoparticles with antimicrobial properties can be incorporated into packaging to extend food freshness and prevent spoilage.

**Nanoencapsulation of Flavors and Additives:** Nanoencapsulation techniques protect flavors, colors, and preservatives, ensuring their stability against environmental factors and controlled release during consumption, enhancing food quality and consumer experience.

**Improved Food Processing:** Nanoscale materials and processes can modify the texture, viscosity, and flow properties of food products, improving

processing efficiency and energy use, and enabling the development of novel food textures and structures.

**Safety and Risk Assessment:** Nanotechnology in foodomics also encompasses the development of new methods for assessing the safety and potential risks of nanomaterials used in food products, ensuring they do not pose health hazards to consumers.

The integration of nanotechnology in foodomics opens up new possibilities for creating healthier, safer, and more sustainable food systems. However, it also necessitates rigorous safety assessments and transparent regulations to address any potential risks associated with nanomaterials in the food supply.

### **Implementation of Green Analytical Chemistry in Foodomics**

The development of ecologically friendly procedures has been encouraged by the ideas of Green Chemistry and Green Analytical Chemistry in an effort to create a more sustainable society. The close connection between the Food Bioeconomy, Green Chemistry, and Sustainable Development Goals has contributed to this increase in sustainability. Analytical methods based on Green Analytical Chemistry in particular have improved the nutritional status and quality of communities while enabling more sustainable interactions with their surroundings. They have also aided in the evaluation of food safety and quality as well as food bioactivity investigations.

Implementing green analytical chemistry in Foodomics involves adopting practices and methodologies that minimize the use and generation of hazardous substances throughout the analytical process. This approach aligns with the principles of sustainability and environmental responsibility. Here are several methods and strategies for integrating green analytical chemistry into Foodomics:

**Solvent Minimization and Replacement:** Choose solvents that are less toxic and volatile. Water is often considered the greenest solvent, but when organic solvents are necessary, options like ethanol or isopropanol are preferred over more toxic alternatives like hexane or chloroform. Supercritical fluid extraction, using supercritical CO<sub>2</sub>, is another green method for extracting analytes from food samples.

**Sample Preparation:** Simplify sample preparation steps to reduce chemical and energy consumption. Techniques such as solid-phase microextraction (SPME), solid-phase extraction (SPE), and pressurized liquid extraction (PLE) can be optimized to minimize solvent use and waste generation.

**Analytical Techniques:** Employ analytical techniques that require smaller sample sizes and less reagent consumption. For instance, microfluidics and lab-on-a-chip technologies can analyze very small volumes, reducing the environmental footprint.

**Energy Efficiency:** Opting for analytical instruments and methodologies that consume less energy. This can be achieved by selecting equipment with lower power requirements or by optimizing analytical procedures to shorten analysis times.

**Waste Reduction:** Implement strategies to reduce waste generation, including recycling solvents and reagents and minimizing disposable plastics by using reusable or recyclable materials.

**Non-Toxic Reagents:** Wherever possible, use reagents that are non-toxic and pose minimal environmental risk. This includes selecting reagents derived from renewable resources or those that are biodegradable.

**In-Silico Methods:** Utilize computational methods and predictive models to simulate experiments and predict outcomes, reducing the need for physical testing and thereby saving resources and minimizing waste.

**Real-time Monitoring and In-process Control:** Develop analytical methods for real-time monitoring of food processing and production, which can help in promptly addressing any issues, thus reducing the need for extensive product recalls and waste.

**Eco-Friendly Sample Collection and Transport:** Optimize sample collection and transport methods to minimize environmental impact, including reducing the use of non-renewable materials for sample containers and optimizing logistics to lower carbon emissions.

By implementing these green analytical chemistry practices in Foodomics, researchers and industry professionals can significantly reduce the environmental impact of their work, paving the way for more sustainable food production and analysis methods.

## **Application of Foodomics**

Foodomics is a comprehensive discipline that applies advanced omics technologies, including genomics, proteomics, metabolomics, and transcriptomics, to study food and nutrition for improving food quality, safety, and health benefits. Its applications span across various aspects of food science, nutrition, and health, offering insights that were previously unattainable with traditional approaches. Here are some of the key applications of Foodomics:

## **Food Quality and Authenticity**

**Identification of Food Adulteration:** Foodomics techniques can detect subtle differences in the molecular profile of foods, helping identify adulteration and ensuring product authenticity.

**Origin and Variety Verification:** The molecular fingerprinting of foods allows for the verification of geographical origin, species, and varieties, critical for protecting local products and preventing fraud.

## **Food Safety**

**Pathogen Detection:** Rapid, sensitive detection of pathogens and spoilage organisms in food products, improving food safety and reducing foodborne illnesses.

**Contaminant Identification:** Identification and quantification of contaminants, such as pesticides, toxins, and heavy metals, ensuring compliance with safety standards.

## **Nutritional Genomics (Nutrigenomics and Nutrigenetics)**

**Personalized Nutrition:** Understanding how individual genetic variations affect nutrient metabolism and health outcomes, leading to dietary recommendations on a personalized level.

**Functional Foods Development:** Identifying bioactive compounds and their health benefits, supporting the development of functional foods that can prevent or manage chronic diseases.

## **Food Processing and Innovation**

**Process Optimization:** Analyzing the effects of food processing techniques at the molecular level, allowing for optimization of processes to preserve nutritional value and sensory qualities.

**Novel Ingredients and Products:** Discovery and functional analysis of novel food ingredients for the development of innovative food products with enhanced nutritional and sensory properties.

## **Metabolic Engineering for Improved Nutrition**

**Enhancement of Nutritional Content:** Genetic modification and metabolic engineering of crops to enhance their nutritional content, such as vitamins, essential fatty acids, and antioxidants.

**Reduction of Allergens:** Identification and modification of allergenic proteins in foods to reduce allergenicity without compromising quality or nutrition.

## **Environmental Impact**

**Sustainability Analysis:** Assessing the environmental impact of food production through comprehensive analysis of food metabolomes, helping in the development of more sustainable food systems.

## **Global Food Supply and Security**

**Crop Improvement:** Genomic and transcriptomic analyses to develop crops that are more resistant to pests, diseases, and environmental stresses, contributing to global food security.

By leveraging the vast capabilities of Foodomics, scientists and industry professionals are able to address complex issues related to food quality, safety, and nutrition on a molecular level, leading to safer, healthier, and more sustainable food options for the global population.

## **Conclusion**

This paper on Foodomics shows a vast approach on the food analysis for enhancing the quality of food for its human consumption which is dependent on various analytical techniques. Impliedly, one of the major challenges in the field of analytical chemistry has been the development of effective methods that enable a trustworthy evaluation of dangerous compounds or components that might jeopardise the safety and quality of food. In this regard, the primary action lines have been the study of harmful substances, hazardous microorganisms, or undesirable ingredients in food items. In this approach, significant advancements have already been made in terms of simplicity, cost-effectiveness, sustainability, and sensitivity, selectivity, and repeatability. One of the primary goals in this discipline is to appropriately determine a larger number of compounds in a shorter amount of time, and it is anticipated that the development of targeted and untargeted techniques would enable the same.

This recent approach includes the differential analytical methods mainly based on mass spectrometry, nanotechnology and green analytical chemistry in order to carry out the food analysis on a faster rate and on a non-hazardous scale. Additionally, consumers' concerns regarding the impact of food products on health are growing, and as a result, so is their curiosity about and need for knowledge regarding diet and food items. Therefore, significant efforts must be made to guarantee both consumer safety and food quality. These efforts include updating present legislation, looking for new control tactics and high-quality indicators, and giving the general public enough information.

## References

1. Daniela Braconu *et al.* Expert Rev Proteomics. 2018 : Foodomics for human health - current status and perspectives.
2. Ruben Agregan ey al. Metabolites. 2021. Foodomics - Based approach for the control and quality improvement of dairy products.
3. D. Josaic, Z. Persuric, D. Resetar, L.Saftic, S. Kraljevic Pavelix. Adv Food Nutrition Res. 2017. Use of Foodomics - for food processing and assessing of food safety.
4. Malathi Srinivasan. 2020. Foodomics - The what,,why and how.
5. Savvrani *et al.* 2010. Picone *et al.* 2011 a,b : Foodomics - a new comprehensive approach to food and nutrition, Genes and Nutrition.
6. Ignacio Ortea, Gavin O' Connor, Alain Maquet, 2020 : Review on Proteomics for Food Authentication.
7. Alejandro Cifuentes : 2015. Foodomics - Analytical opportunities and challenges.
8. Rong Zhang, Wei Jia, Lin Shi, 2023 : A comprehensive review on the development of Foodomics - based approaches to evaluate the quality degradation of different food products





**Chapter - 3**  
**Medicinal Review of *Costus igneus*: The Insulin  
Plant**

**Authors**

**Rajiv Gosai**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 3

## Medicinal Review of *Costus igneus*: The Insulin Plant

Rajiv Gosai and Semanti Ghosh

### Abstract

The Insulin Plant ie, *Costus igneus* is natively used in the Indian Subcontinent as medicinal plant for diabetes as a oral supplement and ornamentally grown in many parts of southern India. Its leaves, which are abundant in phytochemical elements like steroids, alkaloids, flavonoids, triterpenes, glycosides, and saponins have gained popularity. This is embodied in the slogan "a leaf a day keeps diabetes away." This review explores the diverse range of pharmacological activities demonstrated by *Costus igneus*, encompassing its impact on learning and memory, anti-inflammatory potential, antimicrobial activity, antiproliferative potential, antioxidant activity, neuroprotective role, and hypolipidemic activity. It is an herb used traditionally, that has strong antibacterial properties against microorganisms. This Plant has the potential to make a major contribution to human wellbeing. The purpose of the investigation into its therapeutic qualities is to set the stage for the creation of new formulations. This project is in line with the larger goal of utilising the plant's numerous pharmacological advantages to improve human health. *Costus igneus* presents itself as a promising topic for scientific study, combining conventional knowledge with current areas of interest. Its complex interactions between its various phytochemical constituents and pharmacological properties offer a wealth of information for more research and, possibly, the creation of novel formulations with wider effects on human health.

**Keywords:** Anti-Diabetic, Antioxidant, Anti-inflammatory, Anti-microbial Activity, *Costus igneus*, Insulin Plant, Phytochemical Constituents.

### 1. Introduction

The leaves of *Costus igneus* is said to help in the synthesis of insulin in the human body, it is a member of the Costaceae family, that is also called as the "Insulin Plant" in India (Meti, 2018). There is an increasing need for herbal medicines to treat diabetes mellitus because oral hypo-glycemic medications have a number of negative effects. Traditional medical practices and folklore

both uses a variety of different plant concoctions to cure diabetes mellitus. Future research on novel oral hypo-glycemic substances derived from traditional medicinal plants of medicinal value will be significant for the creation of pharma products or as a oral-dietary supplement to current treatments. One such traditional plant that is currently gaining popularity throughout the world and being utilised extensively as an ayurvedic medicinal herb is the Insulin Plant. Blood glucose levels have been reported to be lowered by consuming the leaves of this plant; diabetics who have done so report experiencing a drop in blood sugar. Chewing plant leaves for a month is the traditional Ayurvedic treatment for diabetes, which results in regulated blood glucose levels (Meti, 2018). There is increasing interest in identifying plant secondary metabolites for the therapeutic use of diabetes since they include several active phytochemical elements that prevent hyper-glycemia. These components of phytochemicals are naturally organic. Bioprocessing is used in many medications and therapies and has the ability to transform simple chemicals into complex ones. Phyto-chemicals such alkaloid, flavonoid and terpenes are found in *Costus igneus* (Devi *et al.* 2010), which are currently used to manage diabetes (Devi *et al.* 2010). The plant extract was submitted to column chromatography, recently and the active chemicals were identified through bioprocessing in HPLC using the purified fractions. L6 myoblasts were used to test the compounds' antidiabetic potential (Swarnalatha, 2015). Numerous physiologically active substances with antibacterial qualities can be found in plants (Alade, 1993; Samy 1993; Brantner, 1994; Samy, 1999). Antimicrobial drugs made synthetically are less safe and less effective than those made biologically (Balandrin, 1985). Phytochemical substances have been identified as a potential source of therapeutic drugs in recent years (Krishnaraju, 2005). Therefore, it is expected that treatments for bacterial infections will involve the use of phytochemicals with sufficient antibacterial power (Balandrin, 1985). Since then, people have treated a variety of illnesses using different plant parts (Tanaka, 2002). The goal of this study is to assess the phytochemical constituents and antimicrobial activity of an extract taken from the leaves of the insulin plant, *Costus igneus*, as well as the plant's potential to prevent diabetes, inhibit cell proliferation, fight infection, have anti-inflammatory and anti-urolithiatic effects, improve memory and learning, be neuroprotective, and have hypolipidemic effects (Urooj *et al.*, 2010).

## 1.1 Plant Description

The tropical evergreen perennial plant *Costus igneus* is a member of the Costaceae family. Features, simple, alternating, whole, oblong, 4–8-inch leaves with parallel veining that are evergreen in nature. Arranged spirally

around stems, the dark green leaves are large, smooth, and have light a purple underside which are aesthetically pleasing, arching bunches that emerge from subterranean rootstocks. About 60 centimetre is its maximum height, after which the tallest stems topple over and lie on the ground. Gorgeous orange blooms with a diameter of 2.5–12.5 cm is produced throughout the warm months and occur on cone-shaped heads at the terminals of branches (Urooj *et al.*, 2010). Common names, include Insulin plant, Fiery Costus, Spiral flag, Step ladder, Piasal, Kostum, Pakarmula, Bandhukapushpa, Peisar, Jarul, Karintakara etc.

## 1.2 Phytochemical Constituents

Carbohydrates, steroids, tannins, triterpenoids, alkaloids, glycosides, saponins, flavonoids, and proteins were detected by phytochemical screening. It was discovered that the methanol extract had the greatest concentration of these phytochemicals. Preliminary screening of wild plants and the callus (MS and LS media) was extracted with various solvent revealed high number of phytochemicals such as flavones, phenyls, alkaloids, and terpenes in methanolic extracts. Moreover, the successive screenings of *Costus* leaves for phyto-chemical showed that it contains high levels of protein, iron, and antioxidants such flavonoids, terpenoids,  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -carotene, and ascorbic acid examples of such chemicals are *Quertecine*, *Ascorbic Acid* and *Corsolic Acid*.

## 1.3 Pharmacogonical Properties

Many activities have been reported of Insulin Plant. Some of these has not been verified till now. The leaf, stem, root, rhizome, and entire plant are among the different plant sections that have been reported to show different activities. The main source of hypoglycemic potential are leaves. Most reports of the stem's antiurolithiatic action are positive. Considerable antioxidant activity has been demonstrated in both the stem and root extracts.

### 1.3.1 Anti-Diabetic Effects

In south Indian gardens, *Costus igneus* is a widespread visually appealing plant and a widely used medicinal plant. The component that has the strongest antidiabetic effect is the leaves. It lowers postprandial blood glucose levels and also lowers fasting glucose levels. However, the precise mode of action behind the antidiabetic effect is still unknown. Insulin plants have antidiabetic properties as well as reducing the complications of diabetes, such as controlling hepatic and renal parameters, lowering glycosylated haemoglobin levels, adjusting lipid profiles, raising body weight and insulin levels, and exhibiting a significant improvement in the histopathological examination (Meti, 2018).

### 1.3.2 Anti-Proliferative Potential

The anti-proliferative and apoptotic effects of a methanol extract of powdered leaves from *Costus igneus* were assessed by Dhanasekaran *et al.*, (2014) on the in vitro MCF 7 (Michigan Cancer Foundation-7) breast cancer cell line. Without harming the normal cells, the extract was able to shrink the tumour. Viability of the cells and cyto-toxicity of the extract (15–2000µg/ml) were further assessed using the MTT (3–(4, 5-dimethyl thiazol-2-yl)-2, 5-diphenyl tetrazolium bromide) test on the L6 (Rat Skeletal Muscle Cell Line). The extract's IC 50 value was 2000 µg/ml. The extract was not apoptotic to the normal cell lines, but only at very high concentrations did it exhibit cytotoxicity aligned with the normal cell lines. At 2000 µg/ml, the highest dosage at which the extract was shown to exhibit strong anticancer activity. Thus, the dosage dependent cyto-toxicity against MCF-7 cell line was validated.

### 1.3.3 Anti-Microbial Effect

Using 100 mg of root powder, Nagarajan *et al.* (2011) examined the antibacterial activity of *Costus igneus*. To ascertain the antibacterial activity, in vitro grown root extracts of *Costus igneus*, Gram-negative bacterial cultures such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*P. aeruginosa*), *Klebsiella pneumonia* (*K. pneumonia*), *Salmonella sp.*, and *Proteus vulgaris* (*P. vulgaris*) were utilised in the study. Ten grammes of root materials generated from IAA (indole 3-acetic acid) and IBA (indole butyric acid) were extracted using a Soxhlet process with five millilitres each of acetone, chloroform, and methanol. For direct root induction in the study, two growth regulators—IBA and IAA—were combined and introduced to MS (Murashige and Skoog) medium. Using acetone as a solvent, it was discovered that *Klebsiella pneumonia* was most vulnerable to both IBA and IAA derived roots. Its zone clearance was comparable to that of commercially available Anti-Biotic Gentamycin.

### 1.3.4 Anti-urolithiatic Activity

Using an aqueous extract of the stem and rhizome of the insulin plant, Manjula *et al.* (2017) investigated the plant's antiurolithiatic properties. They discovered that the plant extract could increase the formation of hydroxyapatite (HAP) crystals and decrease the formation rate of CHPD crystals, which are a major component of calcium urinary stones. The single diffusion gel growth technique was used to create Calcium Hydrogen Phosphate Dihydrate (CHPD) crystals, and research was done on the effect of aqueous extracts of *Costus igneus* leaves, stems, and rhizome on CHPD crystal

formation. Five distinct concentrations of the plant extracts—0.15, 0.25, 0.50, 0.75, and 1.00%—were chosen in order to confirm the impact of the aqueous extract of *C. igneus* leaves, stems, and rhizomes on the formation of CHPD crystals. In comparison to the control (pure calcium chloride), the plant extract showed an inhibiting impact and a minimal apparent length of developing crystals. The weight of the produced crystals decreased from 2.03 g to 0.06 g (leaves), 0.05 g (rhizome), and 0.03 g (stem) as the concentration of *Costus igneus* aqueous extracts rose from 0.15% to 1.00% (w/v). The presence of chemicals including protein, iron, and antioxidant components like  $\beta$ -carotene,  $\alpha$ -Tocopherol, ascorbic acid, phenol, flavenes (diosgenin, quercetin), glutathione, steroid, alkaloids, and terpenes was the reason behind the plant extract's inhibitory effect.

### 1.3.5 Anti-Inflammatory Activity

The anti-inflammatory properties were studied by Krishnan *et al.* (2014) on a carrageenan-induced rat model and an LPS-induced human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (hPBMCs) in vitro model using,  $\beta$ -amyrin from *Costus igneus* leaves. The greatest degree of inhibition of paw edema at a given dose of 100 mg/kg body weight (bw) was found using the differential fractionation methanolic extract (MEC) of leaves from *Costus igneus*. Several solvents, including butanol, hexane, ethyl acetate, and chloroform, were used in the fractionation of MEC. At a dosage of 50 mg/kg bw, the chloroform extract (CEC) of MEC demonstrated the most positive impact. When compared to carrageenan-induced rats, treatment with CEC substantially lowered the activities of cyclo-oxygenase (COX), lipo-oxygenase (LOX), myelo-peroxidase (MPO), and nitric oxide synthase (NOS). The isolated  $\beta$ -amyrin demonstrated a dosage-dependent reduction in paw edema, and at a dosage of 100  $\mu$ g/kg bw, this resulted in a significant (95%) reduction in rats' paw edema caused by carrageenan.

### 1.3.6 Antioxidant Activity

In 2015, Ramya *et al.* investigated the impact of methanol extract on antioxidant activity against *Enterobacter aerogens*, *Pseudomonas fragi*, and *Klebsiella oxytoca* at different doses between 100  $\mu$ g/mL and 500  $\mu$ g/mL. *Costus igneus* was evaluated for its antioxidant and radical scavenging properties in both its stem and root extracts. Compared to stem extract, root extract displayed a higher inhibition rate. Additionally, it was discovered that the total phenolic content of the *Costus igneus* root extracts exceeded that of the stem extracts. Root extract has a significant vitamin E content as well. Certain flavonoids have radical scavenging and proton-donating properties



depending on their hydroxyl position and molecular structure. The study made it clear that the polyphenols and antioxidants present obtained from the extract not only lowers the free radicals but also inhibits the generation of free radicals.

### **1.3.7 Neuroprotective Role**

In 2018, Gupta *et al.*, examined the neuroprotective effects of insulin plant extracts and exogenous melatonin on the brains of female diabetic rats induced by streptozotocin. In comparison to the rats in a control group, the extract demonstrated a considerable reduction in lipid peroxidation (TBARS) in the brain tissue. Moreover, melatonin and plant extract significantly decreased the brain's levels of the antioxidant enzymes catalase (CAT), reduced glutathione (GSH), and superoxide dismutase (SOD). Plant extract and melatonin both demonstrated a strong ability to reverse the hyperglycemic effect that diabetes causes in the brain and preserve brain tissues by increasing the quantity of glial and astrocyte cells.

### **1.3.8 Hypolipidemic Effect**

In streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetic albino rats, Pazhanichamy *et al.* (2011) examined the anti-hyperglycemic and hypolipidemic properties of *Costus igneus* rhizome methanol extract. For a duration of 30 days, MECiR was administered orally to rats with diabetes at doses of 100 and 200 mg/kg body weight as a single dose every day. A better outcome was attained at 200 mg/kg. In diabetic albino rats generated by STZ, the antidiabetic and hypolipidemic effects were equivalent to those of the usual reference medication, *Glibenclamide* (5 mg/kg/bw).

### **1.3.9 Future Perspective**

The future perspective of medicinal usage of Insulin plant, involves ongoing research to substantiate its potential antidiabetic properties, with a focus on identifying specific active compounds. Clinical trials are expected to increase, providing more robust evidence, potentially leading to the development of standardized herbal products. The exploration of synergies with conventional antidiabetic medications and efforts towards sustainable cultivation could contribute to its integration into global healthcare protocols. If proven effective, *Costus igneus* may gain wider recognition, fostering collaboration between traditional and modern healthcare practices for more holistic diabetes management strategies.

## **2. Conclusion**

*Costus igneus* has been seen as an important medicinal plant with various

pharmacological properties, this plant is found to contain many phytochemicals such as flavones, essential oils, resins, alkaloids namely sasserite, catechin, inulin and their derivatives. (Thiruchenduran *et al.*, 2017; Saravanan *et al.*, 2014). These compounds have shown important activities such as anti-diabetic, anti-microbial, anti-inflammatory, anti-proliferative and anti-urolithic properties. Furthermore, the effect on learning, memory and neuro-cognitive abilities are further to be verified. Thus, further studies of the phytoconstituents of this plant can provide us a more reliable and effective solutions with less side effects for the treatment of mankind and human welfare as a whole.

## References

1. Arun, N., Udhaya, A., & Rajagurua, P. (2011). In vitro root induction and studies on antibacterial activity of root extract of *Costus igneus* on clinically important human pathogens. *Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology research*, 1(4), 67-76.
2. Bhat, V., Asuti, N., Kamat, A., Sikarwar, M. S., & Patil, M. B. (2010). Antidiabetic activity of insulin plant (*Costus igneus*) leaf extract in diabetic rats. *Journal of Pharmacy Research*, 3(3), 608-611.
3. Chetty, S., Adiga, S., & Reddy, S. (2014). Evaluation of the effect of *costusigneus* on learning and memory in normal and diabetic rats using passive avoidance task. *Int J Pharm Pharm Sciences [Internet]*, 6(2).
4. Chimurkar, L., Kale, R., & Varma, S. (2018). Evaluation of *Costus Igneus* on Lipid Profile Status and Anti-Hyperglycemic Activity in Alloxan Induced Diabetic Rats. *International Journal of Research & Review*, 5, 88-93.
5. Dhanasekaran, S., Akshaya, M., & Preethi, S. (2014). In Vitro anti-proliferative potential of leaves of *Costus igneus*. *International Journal of Innovations in Engineering and Technology*, 4, 277-283.
6. Gothandam, K. M., Aishwarya, R., & Karthikeyan, S. (2010). Preliminary screening of antimicrobial properties of few medicinal plants. *Journal of phytology*, 2(4).
7. Gupta, D., Rai, S., Hajam, Y. A., Ghosh, H., & Basheer, M. (2018). Neuroprotective Role of Exogenous Melatonin and Insulin Plant (*Costus igneus* nak.) Extract on Brain in Streptozotocin-Induced Diabetes in Female Rat. *Research & Reviews: A Journal of Pharmacognosy*, 5, 33-41.
8. Hegde, P. K., Rao, H. A., & Rao, P. N. (2014). A review on Insulin plant

- (*Costus igneus* Nak). *Pharmacognosy reviews*, 8(15), 67–72.
9. Hegde, P. K., Rao, H. A., & Rao, P. N. (2014). A review on Insulin plant (*Costus igneus* Nak). *Pharmacognosy reviews*, 8(15), 67.
  10. Kala, S. (2014). Antimicrobial Activity of *Coleus For skohlilii* (Wild) Briq and *Costus igneus* NE Br. *Journal of Pharmacy and Biological Science*, 9, 01-06.
  11. Kalailingam, P., Kaliaperumal, R., Shanmugam, K., & Tamilmani, E. (2011, February). Efficacy of Methanolic Extract of *Costus igneus* rhizome on hypoglycemic, hypolipidemic activity in streptozotocin (STZ) diabetic rats and HPTLC analysis of its active constituents. In *International Conference on Bioscience, Biochemistry and Bioinformatics* (Vol. 5, pp. 318-321).
  12. Kalailingam, P., Sekar, A. D., Samuel, J. S. C., Gandhirajan, P., Govindaraju, Y., Kesavan, M.,... & Tamilmani, E. (2011). The efficacy of *Costus igneus* rhizome on carbohydrate metabolic, hepatoprotective and antioxidative enzymes in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Journal of Health Science*, 57(1), 37-46..
  13. Krishnan, K., Mathew, L. E., Vijayalakshmi, N. R., & Helen, A. (2014). Anti-inflammatory potential of  $\beta$ -amyrin, a triterpenoid isolated from *Costus igneus*. *Inflammopharmacology*, 22, 373-385.
  14. Krishnaswamy, M., & Purushothaman, K. K. (1980). Plumbagin: a study of its anticancer, antibacterial and antifungal properties.
  15. Majumdar, M., & Parihar, P. S. (2011). Antibacterial, antioxidant and antiglycation potential of *Costus pictus* from Southern region, India. *Asian Journal of Plant Science & Research*.
  16. Mani, P., Kanivalan, N., & Rajakumar, R. (2014). Anti-Diabetic and Hypolipidemic Effects of *Costus igneus* Leaves Extracts Against Streptozotocin Induced Diabetic Albino Rats. *Acta Biomedica Scientia*, 1, 74-79.
  17. Mathew, F., & Varghese, B. (2019). A review on medicinal exploration of *Costus igneus*: the insulin plant. *Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res*, 54(2), 51-57.
  18. Mathew, F., & Varghese, B. (2019). A review on medicinal exploration of *Costus igneus*: the insulin plant. *Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res*, 54(2), 51-57.
  19. Meti, R. (2018). Standardization, value addition and sensory evaluation

- of products prepared from insulin plant leaves (*Costus igneus*). *International Journal of Advanced Educational Research*, 3, 374-376.
20. Nadumane, V., Rajashekar, S., Narayana, P., Adinarayana, S., Vijayan, S., Prakash, S., & Sharma, S. (2011). Evaluation of the anticancer potential of *Costus pictus* on fibrosarcoma (HT-1080) cell line. *Journal of Natural Pharmaceuticals*, 2(2), 72-72.
  21. Nagarajan, A., Arivalagan, U., & Rajagurua, P. (2011). In vitro root induction and studies on antibacterial activity of root extract of *Costus igneus* on clinically important human pathogens. *Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology Research*, 1(4), 67-76.
  22. Palanivel, V., Mohamed Jihad, E. V., & Senthil Kumar, K. L. (2013). Evaluation of hypoglycemic activity of *Costus igneus* extract (whole plant) on alloxan induced diabetic rats. *International journal of advanced pharmaceutical genuine research*, 1(2), 9-19.
  23. Panagal, M., Kumar, R. A., Bastin, T. J., Jenifer, S., & Muthuvel, A. (2010). Comparative evaluation of extracts of *C. igneus* (or *C. pictus*) for hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic activity in alloxan diabetic rats. *International Journal of Pharmacy and Technology*, 2(1), 183-195.
  24. Pawar, R., Rane, A., & Dhamnaskar, R. (2020). AGONIST STUDY OF PHYTOLOGANDS OF *C. IGNEUS* TARGETED AGAINST ENZYMES OF ANTIOXIDANT DEFENCE SYSTEM.
  25. Prakash, H. A., Hegde, L., Kumar, S., & Rao, N. P. (2016). Macro-microscopy and TLC atlas of leaves of *Costus igneus* Nak. *Journal of Ayurveda Medical Sciences*, 1, 5-11.
  26. Radha, A., Balasubramanian, K., Shruti, B. S., & Nandhini, S. R. (2015). Studies on Optimization of Medium in Induction and Regeneration of Callus and Shoot from *Costus igneus* and its Phytochemical Profile. *Journal of Academia and Industrial Research (JAIR)*, 4(2), 75.
  27. Ramya Urs, S. K., & Chauhan, J. B. (2015). Phytochemical screening, Antimicrobial activity and Anti oxidant activity of *CostusIgneus*. *European J Molecular Bio and Biochemistry*, 2(2), 93-96.
  28. Saranya, R., David, E. & V, M. (2016). Genotyping of insulin plant *costus igneus* using *trnh-psba* using intergenic spacer gene *trnh-psba* (PTIGS) and biogenic gold nanoparticles synthesis. *International Journal of PharmTech Research*, 9(6):492–501.

29. Saraswathi, R., Lokesh, U., Venkatakrisnan, R., Meera, R., & Devi, P. (2010). Isolation and biological evaluation of steroid from stem of *Costus igneus*. *Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Research*, 2(5), 444-448.
30. Saravanan, A., Karunakaran, S., Vivek, P., & Dhanasekaran, S. (2014). Studies on antibacterial activity of root extract of *costusigneus*. *Intern J Chem Tech Res [Internet]*, 6(9).
31. Sathuvan, M., Vignesh, A., Thangam, R., Palani, P., Rengasamy, R., & Murugesan, K. (2012). In vitro antioxidant and anticancer potential of bark of *costus pictus* D. Don. *Asian Pacific Journal of Tropical Biomedicine*, 2(2), S741-S749.
32. Shetty, A. J., Choudhury, D., Nair, V., Kuruvilla, M., & Kotian, S. (2010). Effect of the insulin plant (*Costus igneus*) leaves on dexamethasone-induced hyperglycemia. *International journal of Ayurveda research*, 1(2), 100.
33. Shivaprakash, G., Thottacherry, E. D., Rai, S., Nandini, M., & Kumarachandra, R. (2014). Evaluation of Antioxidant potential of *Costus igneus* in ethanol induced peroxidative damage in albino rats. *Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science*, 4(8), 052-055.
34. Specht, C. D., & Stevenson, D. W. (2006). A new phylogeny-based generic classification of Costaceae (Zingiberales). *Taxon*, 55(1), 153-163.
35. Thiruchenduran, S., Maheswari, K. U., Prasad, T. N. V. K. V., Rajeswari, B., & Suneetha, W. J. (2017). UV-Vis scanning coupled with PCA as an alternative method for phytochemical screening of natural products – *Costus Igneus* leaf metabolites. *Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry*, 6(1), 411-416.
36. Urooj, A. (2010). Nutrient profile and antioxidant components of *Costus speciosus* Sm. and *Costus igneus* Nak.
37. Yuvarani, T. H. A. N. I. K. A. S. A. L. A. M., Manjula, K. E. S. A. V. A. N., & Gopu, P. A. (2017). Growth and characterization of calcium hydrogen phosphate Dihydrate crystals influenced by *Costus igneus* aqueous extract. *Int J Pharm Pharm Sci*, 9(5), 173-8.

## **Chapter - 4**

### **Functional Effect of Yogurt in Human Health**

#### **Authors**

##### **Ramu Samanta**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India



# Chapter - 4

## Functional Effect of Yogurt in Human Health

Ramu Samanta and Semanti Ghosh

### Abstract

The food business has consistently worked to provide products that are enhanced together bioactive, nutrients probiotics, and more ingredients to enhance biological processes, improve the nutritive significant and other medical care. Healthy foods have grown in popularity extremely popular in the recent past on a global scale. A significant portion of people's diets consist of dairy products, including yogurt, a cultured dairy product, has garnered significant attention for its potential health benefits. This product's enrichment successfully lowers or avoids disorders linked to nutritional deficiency. Yogurt is highly accepted by people because of its affordable price and great nutritional content. Accordingly, it is a suitable choice for probiotics and vitamin enrichment. This paper covers the current investigation into the advantages of eating yogurt on human health. Key components yogurt, with probiotics, prebiotics, vitamins, minerals, and bioactive peptide, contribute to its diverse health-promoting properties. Yogurt serves as a plentiful supply of vital nutrients, including protein, calcium, and vitamin D, supporting healthy bones and muscle maintenance. Its bioactive peptides exhibit anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and antimicrobial activities, potentially reducing the risk of chronic diseases. This review underscores the multifaceted contributions of yogurt to human health and highlights its potential as a functional food in promoting overall well-being and disease prevention. It is need to do more study to clarify the systems that support these beneficial impacts and optimize yogurt's role in dietary recommendations for various populations.

**Keywords:** Bioactive Peptides, Cancer Prevention, Health, Immune System, Probiotics, Yogurt

### 1. Introduction

Functional foods, which offer vital nutrients and improve human health, are becoming more and more popular as a result of customers' demand for



healthier eating. Foods that are processed or natural that comprise biologically active substances— whether recognized or not that have been clinically shown to improve health in the course of management, both avoidance and intervention of chronic ailments in specific, safe dosages are referred to as functional foods. The demand for beneficial meals is rising globally as a result of advancements in technology, the creation of new products, and increased consumer of health issues. The term "functional foods" refers to a category of food items that, in addition to their primary dietary elements, also include - Healthy microbes (like beneficial bacteria and other nutrition promoting substances). Consumer intentions toward healthy food products and lifestyle have been found to be significantly correlated by research (Abdu-Moghadam *et al.*, 2023, Shibby *et al.*, 2013, Martirosyan *et al.*, 2015, Damián *et al.*, 2022). *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and *Streptococcus thermophilus*, generally two live bacteria, ferment and acidify milk to generate yogurt and fermented milks. This procedure yields a product that is thicker and has a longer shelf life. The origins of yogurt trace back to ancient civilizations, where nomadic tribes discovered the transformative power of fermenting milk into a tangy, creamy substance. Cultures such as those found in Mesopotamia and the Indian subcontinent revered yogurt for its purported health benefits and used it both as a dietary staple and a medicinal remedy. Over time, yogurt spread across continents, assuming diverse forms and cultural significance in different regions. Despite its ancient roots, yogurt's journey from a traditional food to a scientifically validated health-promoting agent has been a recent phenomenon, spurred by advancements in nutritional science and epidemiological research (Hadjimbei *et al.*, 2022, Abdu-Moghadam *et al.*, 2023). Yogurt is among the greatest important famous fermentation foods nationwide Because of its flavor and advantageous properties. It is suitable for serving as a midday snack or as an accompaniment to the main course. consuming reasonable amounts of dairy products every day, namely yogurt is recommended by the Mediterranean diet pyramid. whereas two to three servings of dairy products daily are advised in diets all around the world (Hadjimbei *et al.*,2022). The objective of this review is to evaluate yogurts' potential health advantages. First, the nutritional benefits of yogurt and fermented milks are discussed, and then their specific health impacts are mentioned. Including nutritional composition of yogurt, gut health, probiotics, immune function, weight management and metabolic health, disease prevention and management. The last section of the review is devoted to the prospective uses of fermented milks and yogurts as a means of creating new functional meals.

## 1.1 Nutritional Composition

The rich nutritional profile of yogurt, which is made up of a well-balanced combination of macronutrients, micronutrients, and bioactive substances, is what gives it its health-promoting qualities. Along with vital vitamins and minerals like calcium, potassium, and phosphorus, as well as key vitamins like B vitamins, vitamins B2, vitamins B12, and vitamin D, a normal serving of yogurt offers a balanced combination of protein, carbs, and fats. Furthermore, probiotic bacteria—specifically, *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* strains—are added during the fermentation process during the creation of yogurt, which has additional health advantages. These probiotics are essential for preserving the equilibrium of the gut microbiota, which promotes immune system strength and digestive health. For healthy bone mass and density growth, calcium is required. Consuming calcium is crucial for the formation of the skeleton. Apart from its function in constructing and preserving teeth and bones. In addition, calcium has several metabolic functions in every other organ's cells (Manifold *et al.*, 2014). Phosphates, plays a crucial part in several vital bodily processes. Phosphate, the primary inorganic molecule present in teeth and bones, is found in DNA and RNA, hydroxyapatite, is created when phosphates and calcium ions interact (Hadjimbei *et al.*, 2022). The primary extracellular cation is potassium. It functions as a counteranion for anion accumulation, a cellular osmoticum for quickly growing cells, and a counteranion for electrogenic transport pathways. The immune system's operation, as well as the expansion, development, and procreation of healthy cells and tissues, also all depend on vitamin A. In addition to being necessary for the metabolism of fats, carbs, and amino acids, vitamin B2 also promotes antioxidant defense. One of the most vitamins is vitamin-D, because it regulates hormones and is essential for calcium homeostasis, phosphorus, bone metabolism and as a fat-soluble vitamin, vitamin D. Several investigations have demonstrated the critical function of vitamin D in lowering insulin intolerance. Therefore, by addressing certain metabolic issues, this vitamin can aid in the reduction of inflammation throughout the human physique (Morvaridzadeh *et al.*, 2021). Even though a vitamin D deficiency continues to be an issue globally and that customers have recently taken medication doses, it's critical to take into account the negative effects of excessive vitamin D usage, often known as hypervitaminosis D.

## 1.2 Immune function

Yogurt's ability to modulate the immune system has drawn more attention recently. particularly when it comes to boosting immune systems and preventing infectious disorders. Yogurt's probiotic microbes interact with immune system cells in the lymphoid tissue connected to the intestines to

promote the generation of cytokines that reduce inflammation and strengthen mucosal immunity (Kyaw *et al.*, 2005). Young women's daily consumption of yogurt stimulated cellular immunological activities; however, the probiotic product did not outperform the conventional one. Both groups' T cell CD69 expression improved after consuming yogurt, with CD8<sup>+</sup> and CD4<sup>+</sup> exhibiting the biggest increases. The cytotoxic activity became greater after ingestion, and this effect lasted long after stopping consumption (Meyer *et al.*, 2006). Additionally, The risk of acute upper respiratory tract infections in the elderly was decreased by yogurt fortified with *Lactobacillus paracasei*. Compared to the control group, the intervention group saw a much greater shift in the proportion of CD3<sup>+</sup> cells. Also, there is growing evidence that peptides and bioactive substances generated from yogurt may have immune-modulating qualities, which would enhance immune function even more (Pu *et al.*, 2017). Globally, the rising incidence of immune-related allergy illnesses poses a significant economic and societal challenge. It is essential for the monitoring and prevention of allergic disorders to comprehend the basic molecular process that supports the genesis of these illnesses in addition to novel therapeutic modalities (Yao *et al.*, 2010). Probiotics have been shown to protect against and manage allergy illnesses, which has recently enhanced our knowledge of these illnesses' origins and remedies. Studies conducted in vitro on certain probiotics, including *Lactobacillus plantarum*, have demonstrated the ability to prevent allergy-related illnesses by inducing the host to generate interferon-g and interleukin-12 (Song *et al.*, 2016). In an alternative investigation, *L. plantarum* dramatically decreased the levels of histamine, E immunoglobulin specific to ovalbumin, and total immunoglobulin E in mice's serum that had been exposed to ovalbumin. Considering *L. plantarum* demonstrated markedly intensify the secretions of interleukin-4 and interferon-g in spleen cells from mice, which are in charge of reducing allergy symptoms (Kerry *et al.*, 2018). Evaluating the anti-allergic efficacy and mechanism of the way that probiotics work may benefit from more research.

### 1.3 Gut health and probiotics

When taking antibiotics, AAD is a typical adverse consequence. Yogurt eating has demonstrated possible health advantages for gastrointestinal sickness like allergies, *Helicobacter pylori* infection, as well as autoimmune bowel illness. Consuming yogurt does not consistently result in avoiding AAD, per a comprehensive examination and evaluation (Patro-Golab *et al.*, 2015). After eating probiotic yogurt, vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 and blood glucose significantly decreased. Additionally, there were notable alterations in intercellular adhesion molecule-1, insulin, and plasminogen activator inhibitor blood levels sensitivity monitoring index (QUICKI) and

insulin resistance (HOMA-IR) were higher in the experimental group when contrasted with the control cohort. Consequently, by increasing VCAM-1 and crossing blood sugar, eating yogurt with beneficial bacteria is anticipated to enhance endothelial function and decreasing the chance of coronary disease associated with the metabolic disorder (Rezazadeh *et al.*, 2019). The outcomes of yogurt that is combined with *B. Lactococcus lactis* on the release of interferon-gamma specific antigen and the amount of low-density lipoprotein was examined by Nishiyama *et al* (Nishiyama *et al.*, 2018). LDL was shown to have dramatically decreased not within the group under control, but rather inside the group receiving the intervention. When the intervention depending on LDL values, the group was split into two groups. greater than or equivalent to 120 mg/dL, only the group with elevated LDL levels demonstrated this effect. Among those suffering from illness of the non-alcoholic fatty liver Yogurt with probiotics increases fasting insulin and body mass index without affecting blood leptin or adiponectin levels (Nabavi *et al.*, 2015). Eight weeks were spent by the control group consuming 300g of normal yogurt on a daily basis, whereas On each day, the experimental group ate 300g of probiotic yogurt. The results showed a significant decrease in body weight, BMI, and blood levels of fasting insulin as compared to the control group. Despite the fact that neither group's waist Adiponectin, serum leptin, insulin resistance, waist circumference, or the ratio of leptin to adiponectin changed significantly. Therefore, it is advised to use probiotic yogurt that contains *L. acidophilus. lactis* Bb12 to reduce the possibility of NAFLD by lowering BMI and raising blood concentrations of insulin. Probiotics did not change the levels of serum leptin or adiponectin, thus more research is needed to determine if probiotic products can influence adiponectin in NAFLD patients. investigated the outcome of those patients' yogurt with beneficial bacteria diet on metabolic parameters. In comparison to the control group, they found that ingesting probiotic yogurt decreased plasma levels of LDL, total saturated fat, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and alanine aminotransferase (ALT) by 4.67%, 5.42%, 1.4%, and 6.92%, respectively. Thus, eating probiotic yogurt may help manage NAFLD risk factors as it improved the tested samples' levels of low-density lipoproteins, total cholesterol, and liver enzymes.

**Table 1:** An overview of the use of several microbial strains in yogurt and how it affects adult metabolic and intestinal health

Probiotics strains	Effects	Reference
( <i>Lactobacillus bulgaricus</i> , <i>Streptococcus thermophilus</i> ), ( <i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i> ),	Reduced levels of CRP in serum	Mousavi <i>et al.</i> , 2020

<i>(S. thermophilus, L. bulgaricus),</i>		
<i>Bifidobacterium lactis</i> <i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i>	Reduced Fasting Blood Sugar	Ejtahed <i>et al.</i> , 2011
<i>Bifidobacterium lactis</i> <i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i>	Reduced Focus of LDL-Cholesterol and Overall Cholesterol	Ejtahed <i>et al.</i> , 2012
<i>Bifidobacterium lactis</i> <i>L. lactis</i>	Reduced LDL, or low-density lipoprotein	Nishiyama <i>et al.</i> , 2018
<i>Bifidobacterium lactis</i> <i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i>	Lowering of the Blood Sugar Level	Rezazadeh <i>et al.</i> , 2019

#### 1.4 Advantage of Bioactive peptides

Protein fragments known as "bioactive peptides" are liberated during proteolysis due to the arrangement and makeup of certain amino acids. Bioactive peptides can be taken orally and may interact with appropriate receptors to improve the health of the neurological system, immunological system, and cardiovascular system (Mondal *et al.*, 2021). As a preventive factor against cardiovascular diseases (CVD), The primary delivery method of bioactive peptides with antithrombotic, hypocholesterolemic, and antioxidant qualities is dairy protein. These peptides are produced by lactic acid bacteria (LAB) strains that are proteolytic or by proteolytic enzymes.

GABA is an amino acid that isn't found in proteins that is made from glutamate through the glutamate decarboxylase enzyme, which is present in several LABs cultured in different growth media (Abd *et al.*, 2018). Creating functional yogurt that is high in gamma-aminobutyric acid and bioactive peptides linked to cardiovascular health. This study's objective was to boost productivity. of biologically active components with the goal of creating a new, exceptionally healthy yogurt. The findings demonstrated that the addition of trypsin reduced the parameters of viscosity and WHC, but enrichment with WPC raised these values. WPC and mixed starting showed high levels of biological and proteolytic activity, whereas trypsin treatment had greater effects. GABA levels were high in yogurt treated with a combination of trypsin and starting culture. Probiotic-containing yogurt received the highest rating in the sensory examination. The activities of whey protein, proteinases, & peptidases in the culture environment improve yogurt enrichment, and trypsin plays a vital part in the creation of a variety of peptides in yogurt that have antithrombotic and hypocholesterolemic properties (Rezazadeh *et al.*, 2019). Given the growing consumer demand for heart-healthy meals, it is feasible to utilize partial proteolysis and proteolytic starters to create very nutritious yogurt that is enhanced with GABA and bioactive peptides to meet the specific needs of the target audience.

### **1.4.1 Anti-oxidative activity**

In one investigation, the impact of *Lactobacillus* strains on athletes' oxidative damage was assessed. During the course of four weeks, one group in this study took a mixture of *L.paracasei* and *L.rhamnosus* daily. The thiobarbituric acid (TBA) technique was used in the first phase of the investigation to evaluate the bacterial strains' tolerance to oxidative stress and antioxidative activity. Therefore, each *Lactobacillus* strains exhibit a comparable inhibition of linoleic acid peroxidation when present as whole cells, indicating their antioxidative action, which is mostly shown in intracellular extracts. Furthermore, both varieties show sufficient resistance to oxidative damage. The plasma's biological antioxidant potential and the quantity of reactive oxygen metabolites inside the plasma were then assessed in the probiotic and control groups. Participants had to engage in strenuous physical exercise, which increases oxidative stress and ROS generation. Two of the strains under investigation were shown to have significant antioxidant activity. Increased plasma antioxidant levels from probiotic administration help neutralize ROS and offer a wonderful opportunity to employ probiotics more widely. Furthermore, examination of the feces following probiotic treatment indicated that these bacteria' capacity for colonization is most likely host-specific (Hoffmann *et al.*, 2021).

### **1.4.2 Anti-microbial activity**

One of the most advantageous benefits of probiotics is thought to be their anti-pathogenic action, which inhibits the disruption or modification around the complex population of the microbiome in the gut, in contrast to traditional antibiotics. The anti-pathogenic potential of beneficial bacteria mixtures has been the subject of in-depth research. Sarinena Tejero *et al* (Tejero-Sarinena *et al.*, 2013) examined how probiotics affected the persistence of *Salmonella enterica*, *Clostridium difficile*, and *Serovar typhimurium* in an in vitro system. The hypothesis was that beneficial bacteria suppress pathogens by generating acetic, propionic, butyric, and lactic acids are examples of SCFAs. Short-chain fatty acids maintain the pH equilibrium inside the intestinal lumen, this is necessary for the expression of many bacterial enzymes in addition to the gut's metabolism of toxins and other substances (Kareem *et al.*, 2014). There is evidence that numerous beneficial bacteria produce create a broad range of anti-pathogenic chemicals, including peptides, ethanol, organic acids and hydrogen peroxide. Specifically peptides and bacteriocins, are principally in charge of boosting the target cells' susceptibility, This eventually causes in the depolarization of the membrane potential and, results in destruction of cells (Simova *et al.*, 2009). In a similar vein, the hydrogen peroxide these bacteria

produce triggers the process of sulfhydryl group oxidation, which denatures several enzymes and peroxidizes membrane lipids. This increases the pathogenic microorganism's membrane permeability and, as a result, causes cell death (Ammor *et al.*, 2006). Probiotics does not just result in anti-pathogenic biomolecule substances that straight impact pathogens, but they also activate or stimulate the host's antipathogenic defense pathways. For example, defensins are cationic anti-microbial peptides generated by a range several cell types, among which are intestinal epithelial cells and pancreatic crypt cells in the small intestine. Due to their nutritional qualities, probiotic dairy products have become more and more popular among consumers in the past few years. Foods that are functional also contain beneficial substances in supplementary nutrition. Adding probiotics to food is one method of creating nutritious foods. Probiotic-containing foods improve the equilibrium of intestinal microorganisms, which in turn promotes health (Rezaei *et al.*, 2023). The probiotic component of yogurt is one of its most researched benefits. Live bacteria known as probiotics have health benefits when ingested in sufficient quantities. Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium strains are found in particular in yogurt, which is a powerful source of these good bacteria. Regular, use of yogurt high in beneficial bacteria has been linked to an enhanced the intestinal microbiota makeup. improved digestion and relief from stomach, and strengthened function of the intestinal wall (Mirghafourvand *et al.*, 2016).

### **1.4.3 Probiotics' anti-inflammatory properties**

Inflammatory bowel disease is a group of chronic inflammatory illnesses of the gastrointestinal tract that includes ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. (Iqbal *et al.*, 2014). encompassing the serosa, mucosa, and submucosa, can be impacted by CD, and the swelling might even dispersed over the entire organ. Conversely, however, Large bowel inflammation (UC) frequently affects the colon's mucosa and mucus membrane. (Cammarota *et al.*, 2015). Research has found that that a pathophysiologically significant The positive regulation of IBD is partly attributed to an imbalance in the gut flora. Probiotic, prebiotic, and synbiotic supplements have also been shown to have the potential to alter the course of the illness. (Curro *et al.*, 2017). Reduced synthesis of SCFAs, specifically propionate, butyrate, and acetate, has been linked to IBD. As well, it has been shown that maintaining intestinal homeostasis depends on these SCFAs. Moreover, they have anti-inflammatory qualities and expand the function of the propulsive colon (Curro *et al.*, 2017). Consequently, it makes sense to think that adding prebiotic fiber and indigestible carbohydrates to a supplement alone or in conjunction with beneficial bacteria to raise the formation of SCFAs might be beneficial treatment strategies. The main focus

of current research in this area is the creation of genetically modified types of probiotic bacteria that have the capacity to manufacture and release immunomodulators, Examples include lipoteichoic acid, which is a vital part of the cell wall of Gram-positive bacteria, Trefoil factors are compact proteins that are shared expression in the GIT alongside mucins, or interleukin-10 that can influence the host's immune system and replenish the quantity of commensal bacteria that provide protection. The most often used beneficial bacteria found in food items are Lactobacillus, Bifidobacterium, Enterobacter, and *E. coli*. To combat IBD, new or genetically altered organisms need be created in addition to these ones (Gowri *et al.*, 2016).

#### **1.4.4 Ability to prevent cancer**

Study, world cancer statistics the most prevalent kinds of cancer worldwide. Over 70 percent of deaths caused by cancer worldwide occur in Asia, Africa, and America (Kerry *et al.*,2018). During the previous ten years, Numerous studies have been conducted on tumor through genomics, proteomics, and molecular pathology. This research has improved public knowledge and understanding of cancer. Parallel to this, a number of Nanotechnology and biotechnology have been used to create new drugs with fascinating luminosity properties.(small capsules); nonetheless, tolerance for the impact and load has remained a major obstacle to their use. Probiotics and other Natural materials possessing anti-carcinogenic qualities gained a lot of attention lately (Gayathri *et al.*, 2016). Clinical nutritionists, scientists, and businesspeople are very interested in these and want to collaborate with them to produce a medication that will effectively treat the condition and have little or no adverse effects (So *et al.*, 2017). Lactobacillus fermentum, two probiotic strains, have been demonstrated in vitro tests has proven very successful in preventing colorectal cancer cells and encouraging the growth of healthy colon epithelial cells by producing short-chain fatty acids (ferulic acid).This capacity was additionally compared to that of two additional beneficial bacteria, *L. rhamnosus* ATCC 51303 and *L. acidophilus* ATCC 314, both of which have previously been shown to exhibit carcinogenic potential (Kahouli *et al.*, 2015). Probiotics may be able to significantly reduce cancer, however current study on the subject is restricted to *in vitro* experiments.

Therefore, beneficial bacteria must first demonstrate their anti-cancer potential inside living models before proceeding with animal and clinical research.

#### **1.5 Advantage of diabetes**

The International Diabetes Federation of Southeast Asian nations reports



that 425 million people around the world, including 78 million in the region, have diabetics. (International *et al.*, 2017). Although there is no known cure for diabetes, the condition is treated with a range of medications. Still, bimolecular and pharmacological experts have advanced in their comprehension of the role that synergistic bacteria play in the treatment of the condition (Kerry *et al.*, 2018). Based on quantitative real-time PCR, enormous scale fluorescence in situ hybridization and 16 S rRNA gene sequencing, Larsen *et al.* have suggested a link among the makeup of the gut microbiome and metabolic problems including diabetes and obesity. Therefore, it is anticipated that using probiotics to increase the advantageous microbiota will be crucial in neutralizing the illness (Kerry *et al.*, 2018). Using probiotic and prebiotic therapies to alter digestive enzymes such as glucagonlike peptide-1 and gastric inhibitory polypeptide is another useful strategy for controlling type-2 diabetes. At this point hormones have a part in maintaining glucose homeostasis, which mitigates the disease due to b-cell insufficiency or peripheral insulin resistance. (Grover *et al.*, 2012). Because both carbs have been associated to a decrease in obesity, research is currently concentrated on developing novel Prebiotics with encouraging results in addressing related metabolic issues include arabinoxylan and arabinoxylan oligosaccharides. There has been a lot of discussion about the link among dairy-based items and the pathophysiology of type 2 diabetes mellitus. in addition, Yogurt seems to be a promising diabetic therapy. Patients with type 2 diabetes showed improved antioxidant status and decreased fasting blood sugar level and levels of hemoglobin A1c after eating probiotic-rich yogurt. additionally, probiotic yogurt consumption lowered type 2 diabetics' levels of LDL and total cholesterol, which may help reduce risk factors for heart attack and stroke. If taking 200 grams of probiotic yogurt daily for nine weeks, Insulin resistance did not develop during pregnancy, and serum insulin levels did not rise (Tong *et al.*, 2011).

Furthermore, studies on women with gestational diabetes mellitus who are pregnant have looked at the function that yogurt consumption plays in managing diabetes. Insulin and fasting blood sugar improved considerably more in the women's group that consumed the yogurt with vitamin D3 added. indicate how yogurt affects glucose levels in the body (Li *et al.*, 2016).

## **2. Conclusion**

In summary, an exhaustive examination of yogurt's health benefits for people shows that it has a lot of potential as a functional food with a variety of health-promoting qualities. It is clear from a review of several research and scientific data that eating yogurt has many benefits, from better immune

system performance to better digestive health, among other benefits. Yogurt's where presence probiotic component, which mostly consists of living cultures like *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium*, is essential for regulating gut microbiota and supporting gastrointestinal health. Yogurt also supports bone health, weight control, and cardiovascular disease because of its rich nutritional profile, which includes protein, calcium, and vitamins. Additionally, recent studies suggest that consuming yogurt may help to mitigate long-term diseases including metabolic syndrome, diabetes, and hypertension. This paper provides a thorough investigation of the health benefits of yogurt, highlighting its significance as a staple food in promoting global human health in the future.

## References

1. Abd El-Fattah, A., Sakr, S., El-Dieb, S., & Elkashef, H. (2018). Developing functional yogurt rich in bioactive peptides and gamma-aminobutyric acid related to cardiovascular health. *LWT*, 98, 390-397.
2. Abdi-Moghadam, Z., Darroudi, M., Mahmoudzadeh, M., Mohtashami, M., Jamal, A. M., Shamloo, E., & Rezaei, Z. (2023). Functional yogurt, enriched and probiotic: A focus on human health. *Clinical Nutrition ESPEN*.
3. Ammor, S., Tauveron, G., Dufour, E., & Chevallier, I. (2006). Antibacterial activity of lactic acid bacteria against spoilage and pathogenic bacteria isolated from the same meat small-scale facility: 1— Screening and characterization of the antibacterial compounds. *Food control*, 17(6), 454-461.
4. Cammarota, G., Ianiro, G., Cianci, R., Bibbò, S., Gasbarrini, A., & Currò, D. (2015). The involvement of gut microbiota in inflammatory bowel disease pathogenesis: potential for therapy. *Pharmacology & therapeutics*, 149, 191-212.
5. Currò, D., Ianiro, G., Pecere, S., Bibbò, S., & Cammarota, G. (2017). Probiotics, fibre and herbal medicinal products for functional and inflammatory bowel disorders. *British Journal of Pharmacology*, 174(11), 1426-1449.
6. Damián, M. R., Cortes-Perez, N. G., Quintana, E. T., Ortiz-Moreno, A., Garfias Noguez, C., Cruceño-Casarrubias, C. E.,... & Bermúdez-Humarán, L. G. (2022). Functional foods, nutraceuticals and probiotics: a focus on human health. *Microorganisms*, 10(5), 1065.
7. Ejtahed, H. S., Mohtadi Nia, J., Homayouni Rad, A., Niafar, M., Asghari

- Jafarabadi, M., & Mofid, V. (2011). The effects of probiotic and conventional yoghurt on diabetes markers and insulin resistance in type 2 diabetic patients: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Iranian journal of endocrinology and metabolism*, 13(1), 1-8.
8. Ejtahed, H., Mohtadi Nia, J., Homayouni Rad, A., Niafar, M., Asghari Jafarabadi, M., & Mofid, V. (2012). The effects of probiotic yoghurt consumption on blood pressure and serum lipids in type 2 diabetic patients: Randomized clinical trial. *Iranian Journal of Nutrition Sciences & Food Technology*, 6(4),
  9. Farvid, M. S., Malekshah, A. F., Pourshams, A., Poustchi, H., Sepanlou, S. G., Sharafkhan, M.,... & Malekzadeh, R. (2017). Dairy food intake and all-cause, cardiovascular disease, and cancer mortality: the Golestan Cohort Study. *American journal of epidemiology*, 185(8), 697-711.
  10. Gayathri, D., & Rashmi, B. S. (2016). Anti-cancer properties of probiotics: a natural strategy for cancer prevention. *EC Nutrition*, 5(4), 1191-1202.
  11. Gowri, R. S., Meenambigai, P., Prabhavathi, P., Rajeswari, P. R., & Yesudoss, L. A. (2016). Probiotics and its effects on human health-A review. *Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci*, 5(4), 384-392.
  12. Grover, S., Rashmi, H. M., Srivastava, A. K., & Batish, V. K. (2012). Probiotics for human health—new innovations and emerging trends. *Gut pathogens*, 4, 1-14.
  13. Hadjimbei, E., Botsaris, G., & Chrysostomou, S. (2022). Beneficial effects of yoghurts and probiotic fermented milks and their functional food potential. *Foods*, 11(17), 2691.
  14. Hasegawa, Y., & Bolling, B. W. (2023). Yogurt consumption for improving immune health. *Current Opinion in Food Science*, 101017.
  15. Hoffmann, A., Kleniewska, P., & Pawliczak, R. (2021). Antioxidative activity of probiotics. *Archives of Medical Science: AMS*, 17(3), 792.
  16. Iqbal, M. Z., Qadir, M. I., Hussain, T., Janbaz, K. H., Khan, Y. H., & Ahmad, B. (2014). Probiotics and their beneficial effects against various diseases. *Pakistan journal of pharmaceutical sciences*, 27(2).
  17. Kahouli, I., Malhotra, M., Alaoui-Jamali, M., & Prakash, S. (2015). In-vitro characterization of the anti-cancer activity of the probiotic bacterium *Lactobacillus fermentum* NCIMB 5221 and potential against colorectal cancer. *J Cancer Sci Ther*, 7(7), 224-35.

18. Kareem, S. O., Adio, O. Q., & Osho, M. B. (2014). Immobilization of *Aspergillus niger* F7-02 lipase in polysaccharide hydrogel beads of *Irvingia gabonensis* matrix. *Enzyme research*, 2014.
19. Kerry, R. G., Patra, J. K., Gouda, S., Park, Y., Shin, H. S., & Das, G. (2018). Benefaction of probiotics for human health: A review. *Journal of food and drug analysis*, 26(3), 927-939.
20. Kyaw, M. H., Rose Jr, C. E., Fry, A. M., Singleton, J. A., Moore, Z., Zell, E. R.,... & Active Bacterial Core Surveillance Program of the Emerging Infections Program Network. (2005). The influence of chronic illnesses on the incidence of invasive pneumococcal disease in adults. *The Journal of infectious diseases*, 192(3), 377-386.
21. Li, Q., & Xing, B. (2016). Vitamin D3-supplemented yogurt drink improves insulin resistance and lipid profiles in women with gestational diabetes mellitus: a randomized double blinded clinical trial. *Annals of Nutrition and Metabolism*, 68(4), 285-290.
22. Manifold, B. M. (2014). Bone mineral density in children from anthropological and clinical sciences: a review. *Anthropological review*, 77(2), 111-135.
23. Martirosyan, D. M., & Singh, J. (2015). A new definition of functional food by FFC: what makes a new definition unique? *Functional foods in health and disease*, 5(6), 209-223.
24. Meyer, A. L., Micksche, M., Herbacek, I., & Elmadfa, I. (2006). Daily intake of probiotic as well as conventional yogurt has a stimulating effect on cellular immunity in young healthy women. *Annals of nutrition and metabolism*, 50(3), 282- 289.
25. Mirghafourvand, M., Rad, A. H., Charandabi, S. M. A., Fardiazar, Z., & Shokri, K. (2016). The effect of probiotic yogurt on constipation in pregnant women: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Iranian Red Crescent Medical Journal*, 18(11).
26. Mondal, S., Soumya, N. P. P., Mini, S., & Sivan, S. K. (2021). Bioactive compounds in functional food and their role as therapeutics. *Bioactive Compounds in Health and Disease*, 4(3), 24-39.
27. Morvaridzadeh, M., Nachvak, S. M., Mohammadi, R., Moradi, S., Mostafai, R., Pizarro, A. B., & Abdollahzad, H. (2021). Probiotic yogurt fortified with vitamin D can improve glycemic status in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease patients: a randomized clinical trial. *Clinical nutrition research*, 10(1), 36.

28. Muhammad Zeeshan, I., Muhammad Imran, Q., Tauqeer, H., Khalid Hussain, J., Yusra Habib, K., & Bashir, A. (2014). Probiotics and their beneficial effects against various diseases.
29. Mousavi, S. N., Saboori, S., & Asbaghi, O. (2020). Effect of daily probiotic yogurt consumption on inflammation: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled clinical trials. *Obesity Medicine*, 18, 100221.
30. Nabavi, S., Rafraf, M., Somi, M. H., Homayouni-Rad, A., & Asghari-Jafarabadi, M. (2015). Probiotic yogurt improves body mass index and fasting insulin levels without affecting serum leptin and adiponectin levels in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). *Journal of Functional Foods*, 18, 684-691.
31. Nabavi, S., Rafraf, M., Somi, M. H., Homayouni-Rad, A., & Asghari-Jafarabadi, M. (2014). Effects of probiotic yogurt consumption on metabolic factors in individuals with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Journal of dairy science*, 97(12), 7386-7393.
32. Nishiyama, K., Kobayashi, T., Sato, Y., Watanabe, Y., Kikuchi, R., Kanno, R.,... & Suzutani, T. (2018). A double-blind controlled study to evaluate the effects of yogurt enriched with *Lactococcus lactis* 11/19-b1 and *Bifidobacterium lactis* on serum low-density lipoprotein level and antigen-specific interferon- $\gamma$  releasing ability. *Nutrients*, 10(11), 1778.
33. Palumbo, V. D., Romeo, M., Marino Gammazza, A., Carini, F., Damiani, P., Damiano, G.,... & Gerges-Geagea, A. (2016). The long-term effects of probiotics in the therapy of ulcerative colitis: A clinical study. *Biomed Pap Med Fac Univ Palacky Olomouc Czech Repub*, 160(3), 372-377.
34. Patro-Golab, B., Shamir, R., & Szajewska, H. (2015). Yogurt for treating antibiotic-associated diarrhea: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Nutrition*, 31(6), 796-800.
35. Pu, F., Guo, Y., Li, M., Zhu, H., Wang, S., Shen, X.,... & He, F. (2017). Yogurt supplemented with probiotics can protect the healthy elderly from respiratory infections: a randomized controlled open-label trial. *Clinical interventions in aging*, 1223-1231.
36. Rezaei, Z., Salari, A., Khanzadi, S., Rhim, J. W., & Shamloo, E. (2023). Preparation of milk-based probiotic lactic acid bacteria biofilms: A new generation of probiotics. *Food Science & Nutrition*.
37. Rezazadeh, L., Gargari, B. P., Jafarabadi, M. A., & Alipour, B. (2019).

- Effects of probiotic yogurt on glycemic indexes and endothelial dysfunction markers in patients with metabolic syndrome. *Nutrition*, 62, 162-168.
38. Savaiano, D. A., & Hutkins, R. W. (2021). Yogurt, cultured fermented milk, and health: A systematic review. *Nutrition reviews*, 79(5), 599-614.
  39. Shiby, V. K., & Mishra, H. N. (2013). Fermented milks and milk products as functional foods—A review. *Critical reviews in food science and nutrition*, 53(5), 482-496.
  40. Simova, E. D., Beshkova, D. B., & Dimitrov, Z. P. (2009). Characterization and antimicrobial spectrum of bacteriocins produced by lactic acid bacteria isolated from traditional Bulgarian dairy products. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*, 106(2), 692-701.
  41. So, S. S., Wan, M. L., & El-Nezami, H. (2017). Probiotics-mediated suppression of cancer. *Current opinion in oncology*, 29(1), 62-72.
  42. Song, S., Lee, S. J., Park, D. J., Oh, S., & Lim, K. T. (2016). The anti-allergic activity of *Lactobacillus plantarum* L67 and its application to yogurt. *Journal of dairy science*, 99(12), 9372-9382.
  43. Tejero-Sariñena, S., Barlow, J., Costabile, A., Gibson, G. R., & Rowland, I. (2013). Antipathogenic activity of probiotics against *Salmonella* Typhimurium and *Clostridium difficile* in anaerobic batch culture systems: is it due to synergies in probiotic mixtures or the specificity of single strains? *Anaerobe*, 24, 60-65.
  44. Tong, X., Dong, J. Y., Wu, Z. W., Li, W., & Qin, L. Q. (2011). Dairy consumption and risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. *European journal of clinical nutrition*, 65(9), 1027-1031.
  45. Yao, T. C., Chang, C. J., Hsu, Y. H., & Huang, J. L. (2010). Probiotics for allergic diseases: realities and myths. *Pediatric allergy and immunology*, 21(6), 900-919.
  46. Ziaei, R., Ghavami, A., Khalesi, S., Ghasvand, R., & Mokari\_yamchi, A. (2021). The effect of probiotic fermented milk products on blood lipid concentrations: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Nutrition, Metabolism and Cardiovascular Diseases*, 31(4), 997-1015.



**Chapter - 5**  
**Role of *Helicobacter pylori* in Gastric Carcinogenesis**

**Authors**

**Ritika Roy**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Riya Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Tilatoma Dasgupta**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Srijani Karmakar**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

**Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India





# Chapter - 5

## Role of *Helicobacter pylori* in Gastric Carcinogenesis

Ritika Roy, Riya Ghosh, Tilatoma Dasgupta, Srijani Karmakar and Semanti Ghosh

### Abstract

Gastric cancer remains a major concern as the third most common cancer worldwide, despite declining incidence rates in many Western countries. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) is the leading cause of gastric carcinogenesis, and its infection injures the gastric mucosa, resulting in atrophic gastritis, which then progresses to intestinal metaplasia, dysplasia, early gastric cancer, and advanced gastric cancer. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infections affect nearly half of the world's population. This bacterium has been shown to affect gastric inflammation and carcinogenesis by increasing the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) in the human stomach. Currently unknown is the exact mechanism by which *H. pylori* causes gastric carcinogenesis. *H. pylori* produces  $O_2^{\cdot-}$  on its own, even though the host neutrophil may be the primary source of ROS/RNS production. Moreover, its cytotoxin causes the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) by gastric epithelial cells, which may impact intracellular signal transduction and lead to the development of gastric cancer. Since excessive ROS production in gastric epithelial cells can damage DNA, it is possible that this process contributes to the development of gastric cancer. This review focuses on multiple factors including microbial virulence factors, host genetic factors, and environmental factors, which can heighten the chance of occurrence of gastric carcinogenesis due to *H. pylori* infection.

**Keywords:** Carcinogenesis, Gastric epithelial cells, *Helicobacter pylori*, Inflammatory cells

### Introduction

Discovery of *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) in the human stomach mucosa, in 1983 and its role in stomach and duodenal inflammation and ulceration was revealed. It is unimaginable that a tiny pathogenic organism could survive in the stomach's acidic environment and go on to cause stomach cancer (Marshall and Warren, 1984). This tiny, gram-negative, helical,

microaerophilic bacterium (3.5 mm × 0.5 mm) was discovered, and it fundamentally altered our understanding of gastrointestinal pathogenesis. *H. pylori* bacterium primarily populated in human stomach's antrum. It results in varied degrees of chronic gastritis, which can lead to peptic ulcers in 10-15% of cases, mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma (MALT) in 1-2% of cases, and gastric adenocarcinoma in 1-2% of cases. The World Health Organization's International Agency for Research on Cancer designated *H. pylori* as a group 1 carcinogen in 1994 (Correa *et al.*, 1976). This bacterium damages the lining of the gastric cavity and induces the development of gastric cancer is unknown.

The most widely accepted theory of Gastric cancer caused by this bacterium postulated that oxidative stress and environmental toxins, among other "hits," could cause gastritis to develop into gastric cancer by increasing the rate of DNA mutations (Suzuki *et al.*, 1996).

This review describes the mechanisms of *Helicobacter pylori* causes gastric carcinogenesis.

### **Biology of *H. pylori***

ROS and RNS are two of the variables that affect gastro-duodenal alterations in patients with *H. pylori* infection. Excessive ROS and RNS has been observed in stomach infected by this bacterium and it positively match up with both bacterial load and histological mucosal damage (Davies *et al.*, 1994; Zhang *et al.*, 1997).

The bacteria produce substantial levels of  $O_2^{\cdot-}$  to neutralize the bactericidal actions of inflammatory cell-derived nitric oxide (NO). Since cyanide ( $CN^-$ ) can be used to prevent *H. pylori* from producing  $O_2^{\cdot-}$ , it has been suggested that the  $O_2^{\cdot-}$  production by these bacteria might be due instead to electrons leaking directly out of the respiratory chain of their mitochondria. Reactive species: *H. pylori* generates  $O_2^{\cdot-}$ , which has a modestly potent cytotoxic effect. The  $O_2^{\cdot-}$  generation in *H. pylori* culture, then by *H. pylori* infection which indirect upon the damage on gastric cells of signalling events can be secondary to each other and certain are interconnected processes together.

It is commonly known that in unfavourable circumstances, *H. pylori* changes from having a coccoid structure to its normal helical bacillary morphology (Benaissa *et al.*, 1996). It is hypothesized that the coccoid form, which is incapable of being cultured *in vitro*, is a dormant form that contributes to *H. pylori* reinfection following antibiotic therapy as well as to *H. pylori* transmission (Cellini *et al.*, 1994). It's interesting to note that *H. pylori*'s

coccoid form generates more  $\cdot\text{OH}$  than its helical form (Nakamura *et al.*, 2000). It is unclear exactly what part  $\cdot\text{OH}$  plays in the pathophysiology of the stomach infected with this bacterium.

It has a number of defence mechanisms against external ROS/RNS attack in addition to producing  $\text{O}_2^{\cdot-}$  or  $\cdot\text{OH}$ , which shields it from eradication. The stomach mucosa becomes severely inflamed when *H. pylori* is infected. The stomach's neutrophil-rich environment allows *H. pylori* to thrive, leading to an uncommon but characteristic chronic inflammatory disease. *H. pylori* relatively non-intrusive —though some cases have documented of the bacterium invading the gastric mucosa—means that the inflammatory response triggered by the host immune system may not always identify the bacterium, which contributes to this phenomenon (Wang *et al.*, 2006). Moreover, this bacterium promotes non-reactive T cells, which in turn causes T-cell apoptosis, which in turn causes immune tolerance.

Urease catalyzes the urea into ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ), is another defense process employed by this bacterium. By using this mechanism, *H. pylori* is capable to survival from the high acidity of the stomach and balance out the gastric acid around it. Toxic monochloramine ( $\text{NH}_2\text{Cl}$ ) is formed in the stomach by the reaction of hypochlorite ions ( $\text{OCl}^-$ ) produced by activated neutrophils with  $\text{NH}_3$ . This can damage stomach cells and is a defining character of *H. pylori* infection (Naito *et al.*, 1997).

### **Inflammatory cells**

The primary source of ROS/RNS into gastric cell infected with *Helicobacter* is thought to be neutrophils (Naito and Yoshikawa., 2002; Smith *et al.*, 1991; Handa *et al.*, 2006).

ROS generation in neutrophil is catalysed by nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate oxidase (NADPH oxidase; Nox) on the cell membrane (Lambeth., 2004). When harmful bacteria are detected, neutrophils quickly swallow them (a process known as phagocytosis) to create phagosomes, wherein actively generated ROS from Nox catalysis destroy the invaded pathogens. Phagocytic Nox's catalytic component, gp91phox, is activated during phagocytosis and gets an electron. Phagocytic Nox merges this electron with oxygen either inside the phagosome or externally form  $\text{O}_2^{\cdot-}$ , which is a precursor to microbicidal oxidants. SOD catalyses the conversion of this  $\text{O}_2^{\cdot-}$  to  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . Typically, pathogenic bacteria are eliminated by phagocytes through the utilisation of highly reactive ROS, such as  $\text{HOCl}$  and  $\cdot\text{OH}$ . Nevertheless, these ROS are unable to destroy the bacteria in to the stomach mucosa infected by this bacterium, therefore the phagocytes make more ROS. One main theory for the damage to the stomach mucosa is this overproduction of ROS.

It is thought that one of the main causes of injury to the stomach mucosa is this excessive creation of ROS (Handa *et al.*, 2004).

### **Gastric epithelial cells**

Gastric cells are also stimulated to produce oxidative stress by *H. pylori*'s bacterial cytotoxic agents, which include peptidoglycan, CagA, and vacuolating cytotoxin. We discovered that when the gene *cagA* is transfected into stomach epithelial cells, a portion of CagA localises to the mitochondria, causes the cells to produce a sizable amount of ROS. Moreover, the speeding of the cell division and successive cell addition may be related to elevated ROS generation (Kawahara *et al.*, 2001; Handa *et al.*, 2007).

Since *H. pylori*-infected cells are primarily found on the stomach's antrum, levels of vitamin E in the stomach are known to drop. This could be the result of antioxidant defence mechanisms being mobilised to areas of maximum inflammation (Phull *et al.*, 1996). Study on Mongolian gerbils found that while vitamin C or vitamin E supplementation protects against *Helicobacter pylori*, its effects appear to diminish over time when the infection is persistent (Sun *et al.*, 2005).

For *H. pylori*, it may be an easy way to invade the human stomach mucosa, while for neutrophils, it is the consequence of the body's overreaction. This bacterium causes oxidative stress that develop cancer or the transmission of signals in epithelial cells of stomach

[Handa *et al.*, 2006]. Its precise function is unknown.

### **Gastric carcinogenesis**

Currently accepted theories about *H. pylori*-induced carcinogenesis include cumulative oxidative DNA damage. Numerous reports on the synthesis of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine (8-OHdG), DNA's principal product of oxidative modification, lend credence to this theory. Tumour and tumor-adjacent tissues in gastric carcinoma patients have notably high levels of 8-OHdG than normal tissues.

Enzyme pathways can substantially repair DNA damage, but they are unable to completely repair cumulative oxidative DNA damage, such as 8-OHdG. This could lead to further damage that triggers DNA mutation, which leads to the development of cancer. Furthermore, only a tiny percentage of patients with this bacterium infection exhibit a discernible decline in the amounts of damaged DNA.

While a number of repair genes can compensate for oxidative stress-induced DNA damage, 8-OHdG, can only be partially restored by enzyme

pathways. This could lead to more DNA damage and cause stomach cancer (Kuchino *et al.*, 1986; Farinati *et al.*, 2003).

Furthermore, oxidative stress-damaged genes might not be able to repair damaged DNA, which could lead to the development of stomach cancer. As a result, DNA oxidative damage into the stomach mucosa accumulates earlier in younger patients with *cagA*-positive, which may result in more severe gastric mucosal derangement (Maaroos *et al.*, 1999).

Apart from the generation of 8-OHdG, the build-up of intracellular ROS/RNS can cause point mutations in DNA, which can interfere into multiple tumor-suppressive genes, including p53. This could potentially act in the pathophysiology of cancer.

In studies employing *iNOS*<sup>-/-</sup> mice, where N-methyl-N-nitrosourea was administered to induce carcinogenesis, the NO in *H. pylori*-induced gastric carcinogenesis has been established [Nam *et al.*, 2004].

G:C to A:T transformation is the common mutation of gene found in p53 in gastric cancer. Thymine (T) (G:methylated C to G:T) is created when methylated cytosine breaks down in the presence of NO. The mismatch between G and T is rarely resolved in DNA because thymine is an ordinary nucleobase. Consequently, the G:C to A:T transversion is corrected following replication in DNA. This idea is corroborated by a study showing a high frequency of G:C to A:T transversion mutations in human gastric cancer.

As previously mentioned, *CagA*, an *H. pylori* cytotoxin, causes mitochondria to produce ROS. Because mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) lacks protective histones and DNA-binding proteins and is located close to the electron transport chain, it is more in danger to ROS damage than nuclear DNA.

Additionally, certain cells have limited levels of repair enzymes, which prevents mtDNA damage from being adequately repaired (Wei *et al.*, 1998; Dobson *et al.*, 2000).

Therefore, there is a possibility that the enzymes may show reduced electron transport capability, leading to grow in electron leakage and ROS generation, which will worsen mitochondrial damage. In light of this, *CagA* may cause oxidative stress to the gastric mucosa as well as harm to proteins, mtDNA, and polyunsaturated fatty acids. These effects may intensify damage to nuclear DNA and contribute to the pathophysiology of carcinogenesis (Osamu *et al.*, 2011).

## **Conclusion**

The pathophysiology of gastric cancer may involve numerous other

factors in addition to host factors, microbes' components, and host–bacterial conversations. Ingested food and tobacco smoke, for instance, have a direct impact on the mucosal redox status because they reveal the stomach lining to the reactive oxygen species (ROS) they produce continuously within the gastric lumen. The process by which *H. pylori* produces stomach carcinogenesis is difficult to fully comprehend due to this multitude of variables. Consequently, more investigation is required to elucidate this and to pinpoint effective countermeasures against the carcinogenic consequences of *H. pylori*.

### **Acknowledgement**

We would like to thank School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University for their support to carry out this study.

### **Conflict of Interest**

None.

### **References**

1. Benaissa M, Babin P, Quillard N, Pezennec L, Cenatiempo Y, Fauchere JL. Changes in *Helicobacter pylori* ultrastructure and antigens during conversion from the bacillary to the coccoid form. *Infect Immun* 1996; 64:2331–5.
2. Cellini L, Allocati N, Angelucci D, Iezzi T, Di Campli E, Marzio L, *et al.* Coccoid *Helicobacter pylori* not culturable in vitro reverts in mice. *Microbiol Immunol* 1994; 38:843–50.
3. Correa P, Cuello C, Duque E, Burbano LC, Garcia FT, Bolanos O, *et al.* Gastric cancer in Colombia. III. Natural history of precursor lesions. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1976; 57:1027–35.
4. Davies GR, Simmonds NJ, Stevens TR, Sheaff MT, Banatvala N, Laurenson IF, *et al.* *Helicobacter pylori* stimulates antral mucosal reactive oxygen metabolite production in vivo. *Gut* 1994; 35:179–85.
5. Dobson AW, Xu Y, Kelley MR, LeDoux SP, Wilson GL. Enhanced mitochondrial DNA repair and cellular survival after oxidative stress by targeting the human 8-oxoguanine glycosylase repair enzyme to mitochondria. *J Biol Chem* 2000; 275:37518–23.
6. Farinati F, Cardin R, Russo VM, Busatto G, Franco M, Rugge M. *Helicobacter pylori* CagA status, mucosal oxidative damage and gastritis phenotype: a potential pathway to cancer? *Helicobacter* 2003; 8:227–34.

7. Handa O, Naito Y, Takagi T, Shimozawa M, Kokura S, Yoshida N, *et al.* Tumor necrosis factor-alpha-induced cytokine-induced neutrophil chemoattractant-1 (CINC-1) production by rat gastric epithelial cells: role of reactive oxygen species and nuclear factor-kappaB. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2004; 309:670–6.
8. Handa O, Naito Y, Yoshikawa T. CagA protein of *Helicobacter pylori*: a hijacker of gastric epithelial cell signaling. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2007; 73:1697–702.
9. Handa O, Naito Y, Yoshikawa T. Rat Cytokine-Induced Neutrophil Chemoattractant-1 (CINC-1) in Inflammation. *J Clin Biochem Nutr* 2006; 38:51–8.
10. Handa O, Yoshida N, Fujita N, Tanaka Y, Ueda M, Takagi T, *et al.* Molecular mechanisms involved in anti-inflammatory effects of proton pump inhibitors. *Inflamm Res* 2006; 55:476–80.
11. Kawahara T, Teshima S, Oka A, Sugiyama T, Kishi K, Rokutan K. Type I *Helicobacter pylori* lipopolysaccharide stimulates toll-like receptor 4 and activates mitogen oxidase 1 in gastric pit cells. *Infect Immun* 2001; 69:4382–9.
12. Kuchino Y, Mori F, Kasai H, Nishimura S, Inoue H, Iwai S, *et al.* Misreading of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine-containing DNA in in vitro DNA replication. *Nucleic Acids Symp Ser* 1986:157–8.
13. Lambeth JD. NOX enzymes and the biology of reactive oxygen. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2004; 4:181–9.
14. Maaroos HI, Vorobjova T, Sipponen P, Tammur R, Uibo R, Wadstrom T, *et al.* An 18-year follow-up study of chronic gastritis and *Helicobacter pylori* association of CagA positivity with development of atrophy and activity of gastritis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; 34:864–9.
15. Marshall BJ, Warren JR. Unidentified curved bacilli in the stomach of patients with gastritis and peptic ulceration. *Lancet* 1984; 1:1311–5.
16. Naito Y, Yoshikawa T. Molecular and cellular mechanisms involved in *Helicobacter pylori*-induced inflammation and oxidative stress. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2002; 33:323–36.
17. Naito Y, Yoshikawa T, Fujii T, Boku Y, Yagi N, Dao S, *et al.* Monochloramine-induced cell growth inhibition and apoptosis in a rat gastric mucosal cell line. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1997;25 (Suppl 1): S179–85.



18. Nakamura A, Park A, Nagata K, Sato EF, Kashiba M, Tamura T, *et al.* Oxidative cellular damage associated with transformation of *Helicobacter pylori* from a bacillary to a coccoid form. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2000; 28:1611–8.
19. Nam KT, Oh SY, Ahn B, Kim YB, Jang DD, Yang KH, *et al.* Decreased *Helicobacter pylori* associated gastric carcinogenesis in mice lacking inducible nitric oxide synthase. *Gut* 2004; 53:1250–5.
20. Osamu Handa, Yuji Naito & Toshikazu Yoshikawa (2011) Redox biology and gastric carcinogenesis: the role of *Helicobacter pylori*, Redox Report, 2011, 16:1, 1-7.
21. Phull PS, Price AB, Thorniley MS, Green CJ, Jacyna MR. Vitamin E concentrations in the human stomach and duodenum – correlation with *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Gut* 1996; 39:31–5.
22. Smith WB, Gamble JR, Clark-Lewis I, Vadas MA. Interleukin-8 induces neutrophil transendothelial migration. *Immunology* 1991; 72:65–72.
23. Sun YQ, Girgensone I, Leanderson P, Petersson F, Borch K. Effects of antioxidant vitamin supplements on *Helicobacter pylori*-induced gastritis in Mongolian gerbils. *Helicobacter* 2005; 10:33–42.
24. Suzuki H, Miura S, Imaeda H, Suzuki M, Han JY, Mori M, *et al.* Enhanced levels of chemiluminescence and platelet activating factor in urease-positive gastric ulcers. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1996; 20:449–54.
25. Wang G, Alamuri P, Maier RJ. The diverse antioxidant systems of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Mol Microbiol* 2006; 61:847–60.
26. Wei YH, Lu CY, Lee HC, Pang CY, Ma YS. Oxidative damage and mutation to mitochondrial DNA and age-dependent decline of mitochondrial respiratory function. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1998; 854:155–70.
27. Zhang Q, Dawodu JB, Etolhi G, Husain A, Gemmell CG, Russell RI. Relationship between the mucosal production of reactive oxygen radicals and density of *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with duodenal ulcer. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1997; 9:261–5.

## **Chapter - 6**

### **Phage Therapy: A Promising Paradigm Shift in Antibiotic Resistance**

#### **Authors**

##### **Ritika Roy**

Department of Microbiology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Riya Ghosh**

Department of Microbiology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Tilatoma Dasgupta**

Department of Microbiology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Srijani Karmakar**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University,  
Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 6

## Phage Therapy: A Promising Paradigm Shift in Antibiotic Resistance

Srijani Karmakar, Sahely Roy, Riya Ghosh, Ritika Roy and Semanti Ghosh

### Abstract

In the last few years, rise of antibiotic resistance has posed significant threat to global health. Traditional antibiotics are becoming less effective against certain bacteria, leading to an immediate need for alternative tactics. One such strategy that has gained attention is phage therapy, which offers a promising paradigm shift regarding the combat of antimicrobial resistance (AMR). Using viruses called phages, which selectively target and infect bacteria, is known as phage therapy. Unlike antibiotics, which can kill both harmful and beneficial bacteria, phages have the unique ability to selectively eliminate the pathogenic bacteria while leaving the beneficial ones unharmed. This targeted approach reduces the possibility of resistance forming and minimizes disruption of the body's natural microbiota. The advantages of phage therapy extend beyond its specificity. Phages can be easily isolated and modified to enhance their efficacy against specific bacterial strains. Additionally, phage therapy can be tailored to individual patients, considering factors such as the patient's immune response and the bacterial infection's characteristics. This personalized approach holds great promise for combating multidrug-resistant bacteria (MDR), which are a growing concern in healthcare settings. From wound infections to respiratory and gastrointestinal infections, phage therapy shows promise in diverse medical contexts. Establishing regulatory frameworks is necessary to make sure the security and effective utilization of phages in clinical settings. Further research and clinical examinations are also necessary for validation of the efficacy of phage therapy and optimize its application. In conclusion, "Phage Therapy: A Promising Paradigm Shift in Antibiotic Resistance" highlights the transformative potential of phage therapy in addressing antibiotic resistance. With its targeted approach, adaptability, and personalized nature, phage therapy offers hope for a future where we can effectively combat bacterial infections and preserve the effectiveness of antibiotics.

**Keywords:** Antimicrobial resistance, Bacteriophage, Clinical trials, Infectious disease, Phage therapy, Multi drug resistance.

## 1. Introduction

As one of the most urgent issues of our day, antimicrobial resistance (AMR) poses a threat to reverse decades of medical advancement and threaten millions of lives globally. Antibiotic abuse and misuse led to fueled emergence of resistant pathogens, rendering once-effective treatments ineffective. As traditional antibiotics falter in the face of increasingly resilient microbes, there is a critical need for novel therapeutic approaches to combat this escalating crisis (Lin *et al.*, 2017). In recent years, phage therapy has appeared as a promising alternative to traditional antibiotics that is applicable for medicine, agriculture, and related fields & was being developed nearly ten years prior to the discovery of penicillin (Romero *et al.*, 2019). Bacteriophages are viruses that specifically target and infect bacteria, offering a targeted and potentially more sustainable solution to combatting bacterial infections. Phages are specific due to phage–host receptor surface phage–host receptor surface Endolysins, or phage lytic enzymes, are more broadly specific at the genus and/or species levels (Hibstu *et al.*, 2022). Phage treatment involves using aggressive phages to quickly eradicate harmful germs in clinically unwell patients, using lytic phages, bioengineered phages, and isolated lytic proteins (Viertel *et al.*, 2014). Lytic phages, which encode enzymes like holins and endolysins, can break down bacteria's cell walls, making them efficient against bacteria that are resistant to antibiotics as well as those that are sensitive to them (Drulis-Kawa *et al.*, 2015). In phage treatment, phage mixtures or phage cocktails are used to fight bacterial resistance, targeting distinct bacterial structures and processes. However, widespread use may promote resistance, suggesting that only one unique phage should be used against a pathogen (Ormalá and Jalasvuori, 2013). While there are many benefits and potential uses for phage therapy, there are also concerns about the safety, stability, and quality of phages (Hibstu *et al.*, 2022). Phage therapy is gaining popularity as a new method for bacterial disease control and prophylaxis. Proponents argue that phage therapy offers host-specificity, self-amplification, biofilm destruction, and low toxicity compared to antibiotics. The science of phage biology is advancing due to analytical technologies like electron microscopy and next-generation sequencing. Recent human clinical trials and animal studies suggest a resurgence in phage therapy research (Wahida *et al.*, 2016). This review explores the potential of phage therapy as an alternative approach to AMR, examining its history, early successes, challenges, mechanisms of action, evolution of phage-host interactions, and current research and clinical trials.

## 1.1 Historical Trajectory of Phage Therapy

Dating back to the early 20th century, the groundwork for phage treatment was established by scientists like Felix d'Herelle and Frederick Twort, identified bacteriophages and recognized their potential as antibacterial agents (Kakasis and Panitsa, 2019). The mid-20th century saw a surge of interest in phage therapy, particularly in Eastern Europe, where it was extensively studied and utilized as an alternative treatment for bacterial infections. But once antibiotics became available, phage therapy's appeal declined in Western nations, pushing it to the periphery for a number of years (Kortright *et al.*, 2019). Recent years have witnessed a resurgence of interest in phage therapy, propelled by the global threat of antibiotic resistance and realization of unique advantages of phage', such as their specificity to target pathogenic bacteria and their ability to evolve alongside their bacterial hosts. This revival has sparked a renaissance in phage biology, with researchers unraveling the complexities of phage-host interactions, exploring novel phage-derived therapies, and investigating the potential of phages as tools for ecological and environmental management steps (Wahida., 2016).

## 1.2 Phage life stages

Phages have a lytic or lysogenic developmental cycle inside their host bacterium.6. Between the release of fresh daughter phage particles and the phage particle latching itself to a bacterial cell, a sequence of events known as the lytic cycle takes place. The phage undergoes five distinct stages in its life cycle: adsorption into the host cell, nucleic acid penetration, transcription and translation, assembly, and flight (Benett., 1998). Conversely, the lysogenic cycle comprises the multiplication of both the host genes and the phage nucleic acid over several generations without having a major impact on the cell's metabolism. This is a very rare form of illness known as a latent phase. Sometimes, when the phage genes are in this form, they can go back to the lytic cycle and release (Adebayo *et al.*, 2017).

## 1.3 Bacterial resistance in phages

Mutations, RM systems, adaptive immunity, plasmids, temperate genes, and mobile genetic islands can all help bacteria become resistant to phage therapy. These mechanisms target phage life cycles, resulting in distinct resistance phenotypes based on resistance either total or partial, cost of fitness, mutation countermeasures. Phage-bacterium co-evolution and phage resistance can result from spontaneous bacterial mutations, involve in modifying phage-associated receptors on bacterial surfaces, potentially reducing fitness and making phage-resistant bacteria less virulent (Burmeister

and Turner., 2020). Primitive immune systems, or bacterial RM systems, are crucial defensive systems that prevent phage genomes. They are composed of the enzymes methyltransferase (MTase) and restriction endonuclease (REase). While MTase transfers methyl groups to the same region inside the bacterial genome to ensure the identification of foreign and self nucleic acids, REase detects methylated sequences as self. The defense against phage invasion depends on these systems. CRISPRs obtain spacers from previous exposure or infection, which controls the bacteria's adaptive immunity to phages. By virtue of this special defense mechanism, bacteria are able to identify and eliminate illnesses in the future, passing on their knowledge to subsequent generations. Bacterial mobile genetic elements promote phage resistance, transferring phage-resistant genes. Phages bind to mating-pair complexes, potentially limiting antibiotic resistance-conferring plasmid spread (Hibstu *et al.*, 2022).

#### **1.4 Employing Genetic Engineering and Supplementary Genetic Methods in Phage Therapy**

Genetic engineering and synthetic biology are utilized in phage treatment to produce phages that can recombine different phages to have a wider host range, while whole genome sequencing enables the development of artificial phages. By introducing quorum sensing inhibitors, biofilm-degrading enzymes, bacteriocins, and enzybiotics into phages by genetic engineering, bacterial metabolism and essential functions are inhibited, causing infectious bacteria to die. Lactonase enzyme effectively prevents bacteria's quorum sensing molecules from functioning, which are essential in biofilm formation. Recently, modified bacteriophages were used for the first time to treat a cystic fibrosis patient who had a *Mycobacterium abscessus* infection. Only one of the more than 1800 mycobacterial phages in the bank was able to eradicate the *M. abscessus* clinical isolate. Technological developments in synthetic biology and sequencing have opened up new avenues for temperate gene modification and utilization in the fight against the rising antibiotic resistance. A particular genome sequence is targeted for site-specific cleavage using the gene editing technique CRISPR. For instance, it has been used on enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* and carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae (Tinoco *et al.*, 2016).

#### **1.5 Phage Therapy in Humans**

With promising results in several clinical trials and life-saving therapeutic application, phage treatment is being swiftly revitalized. Regulating and policy concerns for clinical usage and execution, however, provide challenges.

### 1.5.1 Clinical Trials Involving Phages

Georgia, Poland, and Russia are the only countries where human phage therapy is regularly used, with most trials being empirical. The George Eliava Institute in Georgia has extensive knowledge in selecting, isolating, and manufacturing monophage and phage cocktails (Chang *et al.*, 2018). A study in France and Belgium used phage therapy to treat wound infections in 27 patients. The treatment involved a mixture of twelve virulent anti-*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* bacteriophages. Results showed that phage treatment reduced bacterial load faster than conventional therapy. Further research is needed to increase phage concentration and expose more patients to "phagograms," similar to antibiograms (Jault *et al.*, 2019). A seven-year-old patient with cystic fibrosis persistent *P. aeruginosa* and *S. aureus* colonization was treated with the Eliava Institute's "Pyo phage" phage cocktail. The therapy, which was effective against *P. aureus*, *Streptococcus*, *Proteus*, *P. aeruginosa*, and *E. coli*, was administered through nebulization for nine rounds. However, the therapy did not work against *S. aureus*. The patient was then supplemented with the Sb-1 phage, a phage specifically targeting *S. aureus*, which significantly reduced *S. aureus* concentration. No negative consequences were observed. A 60-year-old man was admitted to the hospital with severe abdominal sepsis, *Enterobacter cloacae* peritonitis, and pressure sores. After prolonged treatment, colistin treatment was initiated, but acute renal damage was discovered. The patient's kidney function improved after phage therapy, and a negative blood cultures were. Patient's treatment was halted, and his condition returned to normal (Furfaro *et al.*, 2018).

### 1.5.2 The Key Influencing Factors in Human Trials of Phage Therapy

#### 1.5.2.1 Virulent Genes

Phages carry dangerous genes that can increase a disease's pathogenicity and severity, potentially leading to treatment failure. Several human pathogens like *E. coli*, *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus* and *S. pyogenes*, possess phage pathogenic genes. To ensure safety, it is essential uploading the genome sequence and metagenome to databases including bacterial pathogenic genes and antibiotic resistance genes (Yang *et al.*, 2007).

#### 1.5.2.2 Transduction

Through phage-mediated transduction, bacteria can acquire genes that make them virulent and resistant to antibiotics. By staying away from known transducing phages, this can be lessened (Muniesa *et al.*, 2011).

#### 1.5.2.3 Disturbance of Commensal Microbiome

Phages as therapeutic agents require thorough research on phage-human



niche microbiota interactions, including potential disruptions because of high selective pressure from lytic phages. Further investigations will accelerate phage therapy receiving regulatory consent in Western medicine, as phage disruption of commensal microbiota is modest due to their species-specific nature. Regulatory approval is accelerated by understanding host-phage relationship in niche microbiota (Hibstu *et al.*, 2022).

#### **1.5.2.4 Safety and Quality Standards**

Phage therapy's effectiveness relies on the security and purity of phage preparations, which must adhere to strict regulations. While no precise rules exist for phage manufacturing, 96% of phages contain endotoxins and other contaminants. Quality control includes stability, sterility, cytotoxicity, and pH measurement, ensuring the best possible therapy (Pirnay *et al.*, 2015).

#### **1.5.2.5 Phage Storage and Management**

Phages, commonly used in therapy, are water suspensions with undefined medicinal characteristics. They lack specificity, affinity, solubility, and safety. Due to their proteins, they are somewhat stable in solution. Long-term storage is challenging due to their structural fragility. Phages can be stabilized by adding stabilizers, processing through lyophilization, spray drying, ointments, biodegradable polymer matrices, microparticles, or another formulation (Tovkach *et al.*, 2012).

### **1.6 Phage treatment benefits over antibiotics**

Phage therapy presents advantages over antibiotics due to unique properties. Phages act as potent bactericidal agents, preventing bacterial resistance, unlike bacteriostatic antibiotics. They replicate at infection sites, termed Auto "dosing," enhancing efficacy. Moreover, phages target specific bacteria, minimizing disruption to normal flora, unlike broad-spectrum antibiotics. This specificity reduces the risk of secondary infections such as *Clostridium difficile* colitis or *Candida albicans* overgrowth. The medical community's recognition of the importance of preserving the microbiome has shifted preferences towards targeted therapies like phage therapy. This shift acknowledges the ecological impact of antibiotics and highlights phage therapy's potential in maintaining microbial balance. As research advances and awareness grows, phage therapy emerges as promising substitute to conventional antibiotics, offering precision, effectiveness, and minimal ecological disruption in combating bacterial infections (Adebayo *et al.*, 2017).

### **1.7 Future direction**

The future of phage therapy appears promising as research endeavors

concentrate on refining its efficacy, expanding host specificity, and navigating regulatory challenges. Innovations in phage engineering, bioinformatics, and delivery mechanisms aim to maximize treatment effectiveness and combat bacterial resistance. Clinical investigations are diversifying to explore phage therapy's applications in various infections, including chronic and biofilm-related cases. Collaborative efforts among academia, industry, and regulatory bodies are crucial for advancing phage therapy's development and ensuring its safe integration into medical practice. Additionally, the evolution of personalized medicine may further propel the adoption of phage therapy, as tailored treatments based on individual patient profiles become increasingly prevalent. With ongoing scientific advancements and collaborative initiatives, phage therapy holds significant promise as a potent and adaptable strategy for addressing antibiotic-resistant bacterial infections in the future.

## 2. Conclusion

Phage therapy emerges as a promising solution amidst the growing crisis of antibiotic resistance. Its unique properties, such as bactericidal action and host specificity, offer distinct advantages over traditional antibiotics. Despite challenges like regulatory approval and host range limitations, ongoing research and clinical trials continue to showcase its efficacy and safety. Collaboration across disciplines is crucial for advancing phage therapy, addressing concerns, and refining treatment protocols. As the threat of antibiotic resistance escalates, phage therapy holds immense potential as a targeted and sustainable alternative. With continued scientific progress and collective efforts, phage therapy stands poised in order to transform the way bacterial infections are treated,

## References

1. Adebayo, O. S., Gabriel-Ajobiwe, R., Taiwo, M. O., & Kayode, J. S. (2017). Phage therapy: A potential alternative in the treatment of multi-drug resistant bacterial infections. *Journal of Microbiology & Experimentation*, 5(7), 173.
2. Benett PM. How TGB Bacterial and bacteriophage genetics. (9th edn), 1998;2:231–286.
3. Burmeister AR, Turner PE. Trading-off and trading-up in the world of bacteria—phage evolution. *Current Biol.* 2020;30(19): R1120–R1124.
4. Chang, R.Y.K.; Wallin, M.; Lin, Y.; Leung, S.S.Y.; Wang, H.; Morales, S.; Chan, H.K. Phage therapy for respiratory infections. *Adv. Drug Deliv. Rev.* 2018, 133, 76–86

5. Drulis-Kawa Z, Majkowska-Skrobek G, Maciejewska B. Bacteriophages and phage-derived proteins—application approaches. *Curr Med Chem.* 2015;22(14):1757–1773.
6. Furfaro, L.L.; Payne, M.S.; Chang, B.J. Bacteriophage therapy: Clinical trials and regulatory hurdles. *Front. Cell. Infect. Microbiol.* 2018, 8, 376.
7. Hibstu Z, Belew H, Akelew Y, Mengist HM. Phage Therapy: A Different Approach to Fight Bacterial Infections. *Biologics.* 2022; 16:173-186
8. Jault, P.; Leclerc, T.; Jennes, S.; Pirnay, J.; Que, Y.A.; Resch, G.; Rousseau, A.F.; Ravat, F.; Carsin, H.; Floch, R.L.; *et al.* Efficacy and tolerability of a cocktail of bacteriophages to treat burn wounds infected by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (PhagoBurn): A randomised, controlled, double-blind phase 1/2 trial. *Lancet Infect. Dis.* 2019, 19, 35–45.
9. Kakasis, A., & Panitsa, G. (2019). Bacteriophage therapy as an alternative treatment for human infections: A comprehensive review. *\*International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents*, 53\*(1), 16-21.
10. Kortright, K. E., Chan, B. K., Koff, J. L., & Turner, P. E. (2019, February 13). Phage therapy: A renewed approach to combat antibiotic-resistant bacteria. *\*Volume 25, Issue 2\**, 219-232.
11. Lin, D. M., Koskella, B., & Lin, H. C. (2017). Phage therapy: An alternative to antibiotics in the age of multi-drug resistance. *World journal of gastrointestinal pharmacology and therapeutics*, 8(3), 162–173.
12. Muniesa M, Imamovic L, Jofre J. Bacteriophages and genetic mobilization in sewage and faecally polluted environments. *Microb Biotechnol.* 2011;4(6):725–734.
13. Örmälä A-M, Jalasvuori M. Phage therapy: should bacterial resistance to phages be a concern even in the long run? *Bacteriophage.* 2013;3(1):e24219.
14. Pirnay J-P, Blasdel BG, Bretaudeau L, *et al.* Quality and safety requirements for sustainable phage therapy products. *Pharm Res.* 2015;32(7):2173–2179.
15. Romero-Calle D, Guimaraes Benevides R, Góes-Neto A, Billington C. Bacteriophages as Alternatives to Antibiotics in Clinical Care. *Antibiotics.* 2019; 8(3):138.
16. Tinoco JM, Buttaró B, Zhang H, Liss N, Sassone L, Stevens R. Effect of a genetically engineered bacteriophage on *Enterococcus faecalis* biofilms. 2016, 71, 80-86.

17. Tovkach F, Zhuminska G, Kushkina A. Long-term preservation of unstable bacteriophages of enterobacteria. *Mikrobiol Z.* 2012;74(2):60–66.
18. Viertel TM, Ritter K, Horz H-P. Viruses versus bacteria—novel approaches to phage therapy as a tool against multidrug-resistant pathogens. *J Antimicrob Chemother.* 2014;69(9):2326–2336.
19. Wahida A, Ritter K, Horz HP. The Janus-Face of Bacteriophages across Human Body Habitats. *PLoS Pathog.* 2016;12:e1005634.
20. Yang J, Chen L, Sun L, Yu J, Jin Q. VFDB 2008 release: an enhanced web-based resource for comparative pathogenomics. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 2007;36(suppl\_1):D539–D542.



## **Chapter - 7**

### **Algae-Bacteria Consortium: A Current Approach for Aquatic Clean Up**

#### **Authors**

##### **Arpita Chakraborty**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Dipti Das**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Department of Botany, Kalna College, Purba Bardhaman, West Bengal

##### **Keya Mandal**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Department of Environmental Science, Kalna College, Purba Bardhaman, West Bengal

##### **Supriya Kumar Bose**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Sabyasachi Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Science, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 7

## Algae-Bacteria Consortium: A Current Approach for Aquatic Clean Up

Arpita Chakraborty, Dipti Das, Keya Mandal, Supriya Kumar Bose and Sabyasachi Ghosh

### Abstract

Now the urbanization, industrialization, and civilization contribute the release of numerous toxic compounds, both organic and inorganic, into the environment, particularly into wastewater. To combat this pollution, a variety of methods have been developed, encompassing physical, chemical, and biological approaches. Among these, biological purification of wastewater, particularly employing algae, has garnered significant attention. Nevertheless, the efficiency of monocultured algae in pollutant removal is constrained in comparison to systems utilizing a consortium of algae along with other microorganisms. In wastewater, microorganisms such as fungi or bacteria can form diverse relationships with algae, including mutualism or symbiosis, facilitating the removal of various pollutants. Research indicates that naturally occurring or artificially crafted microalgal assemblages with bacteria or fungi can be employed for wastewater treatment. This review delineates the symbiotic interactions between algae and other microorganisms, emphasizing their utilization in the treatment of wastewater and the challenges hindering the widespread adoption of these consortia at a large scale emphasizing the need for further studies to enhance their commercialization potential.

**Keywords:** Algae; Bacteria; consortium; water treatment.

### Introduction

Algae are classified as photosynthetic creatures and can range in size from unicellular microalgae to multicellular microalgae. Furthermore, algae are ubiquitous in the natural world, thriving in nearly any habitat as long as the necessary nutrients are provided. Algae have garnered significant interest owing to their potential applications in wastewater treatment and renewable energy systems. (Li *et al.*, 2022), given their tolerance for the environment and sustainable energy utilization. In order to help heterotrophic organisms eat and

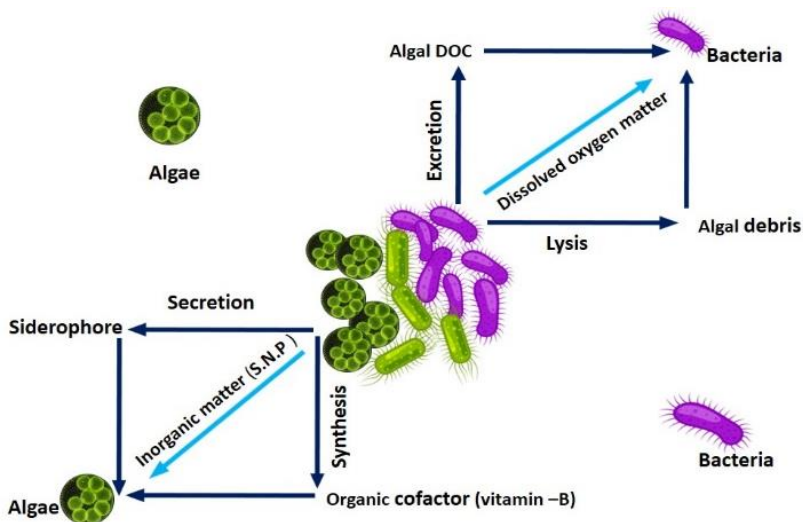


break down organic matter and ultimately recover essential elements, algae can synthesize organic molecules from the absorbed CO<sub>2</sub> (Chen *et al.*, 2020). The region that lies outside algae cells, chains, or cell colonies and is known as the "phycosphere," This area is where bacterial proliferation is encouraged by extracellular products released by algae." Compelling evidence supporting the cohabitation of algae and bacteria to form intricate microbial communities is highlighted by the presence of various bacterial phyla known to establish associations with algae in their natural habitats, such as Bacteroidetes and Proteobacteria. The concept of "algae-bacteria consortia" was initially introduced in 1981 by Nambiar and Bokil. In recent studies, it has been shown that bacteria and algae have the capability to interact and influence the physiology and metabolism of cells within the community. In general, bacterial and algal interactions involve bacteria remineralizing sulfur (S), nitrogen (N), and phosphorus (P) in return for the dissolved organic carbon (DOC) secreted by algae. This process promotes the growth of the algae. As per prior studies, the inclusion of active sludge boosted algal growth by 29% (Bankston *et al.*, 2020). It recognized that bacteria-produced vitamin B12 supports algae growth. While the coexistence of bacteria and algae is well known, very few studies have succeeded in creating an Algae-bacteria symbiosis for treating wastewater (Mu *et al.*, 2021). Moreover, the mechanisms driving the impacts of these combined technologies and their modes of communication remain predominantly unexplored, potentially constraining the applicability of introducing consortia of bacteria and algae to enhance the efficacy of biological wastewater treatment processes. The interactions between bacteria and algae that could be important for removing contaminants from aquatic settings are the main topic of this review. In particular, a critical summary of the chemical relationships between bacteria and algae is provided, with special attention to the biological properties of metabolites and the mechanisms of enhancement of algae that make them appropriate for wastewater treatment. Additionally, a thorough introduction is given to the recently developed uses of algae-bacteria consortium systems. Broadly, the aim of this review is to increase our comprehension of the associations across kingdoms in algae-bacteria consortium systems and offer recommendations for future biotechnological advancements.

### **Different Algal and Bacterial Interactions in an Ecological Niche**

According to Jiang *et al.* (2021), interactions between bacteria and algae can vary from mutualism to inhibition, with the latter having distinct positive or inhibitory effects on the former. According to studies, algae can directly exchange nutrients with bacteria to support their growth. This can happen

when they release organic substances, such as dissolved organic matter (DOM), or when they provide nutrients by breaking down algal cells. Furthermore, bacteria may use algae as a supplementary home, providing shelter from unfavorable environmental factors for bacterial cells. As a result, bacteria can create phycotoxins, such as dinoflagellate growth inhibitors, to inhibit algal activity or growth factors, like cytokinin, to encourage algal growth. In other interactions, it has been discovered that bacteria give an organic cofactor such as vitamin B or that they manufacture siderophores that bind iron and make it bioavailable for algae, which in turn can give bacteria DOC (Figure 1). Many studies have been carried out to date in an attempt to fully comprehend the intricate web of interactions between bacteria and algae that present in natural habitats, these investigations have unveiled a diverse array of interactions shaping the intricate symbiotic bonds between bacteria and algae.



**Fig 1:** Illustration depicting both broad and specialized interactions among algae and symbiotic bacteria.

## Mutualism

In mutualistic partnerships, diverse microorganisms live together, benefiting from each other's presence. Bacteria and algae form complex communities, exchanging macromolecules to support each other's functions. For example, algae provide oxygen for bacteria to break down organic contaminants, while bacteria release CO<sub>2</sub> to enhance algal photosynthesis. Algae also release organic substances like polysaccharides and amino acids, while bacteria provide essential nutrients like nitrogen. The symbiotic

relationship between bacteria and algae is influenced by factors like ammonia levels and nutrient availability. Excessive organic matter can lead to nutrient competition, limiting algal growth (*Krug et al. 2020*).

### **Commensalism**

Bacteria rely on energy from algal organic exudates, forming a commensalistic relationship. Algae provide carbon for bacteria expressed as excreted organic carbon (EOC). *Asterionellopsis glacialis* adapts to its patterns of transcription and metabolism in reaction bacteria. The diatom releases primary metabolites and secondary metabolites such as rosmarinic acid and azelaic acid. Rosmarinic acid enhances the adhesion of beneficial bacteria to the diatom while deterring opportunistic attachment. Azelaic acid stimulates the proliferation of beneficial bacteria and suppresses the growth of opportunistic species, as documented by *Rocuzzo et al. (2021)*.

### **Parasitism**

Algae provide a favorable environment for bacterial growth by shielding them from harsh conditions and releasing extracellular metabolites. Pathogenic microbes typically adhere to algal cellular membranes, initiating cell wall degradation. This symbiotic interaction can become parasitic, especially during algae senescence, leading to the release of p-coumaric acid. This acid triggers bacteria to produce roseobactin, which exhibits toxicity towards algae even at minimal levels. (*Lin et al., 2022*).

### **Endosymbiosis**

Endocytobiosis, a form of endosymbiosis, involves an intricate symbiotic relationship where the endosymbiont resides within the host partner's cells. Intracellular bacteria, including those from the order Rickettsiales, have been found in various algal classes such as Euglenophyceae, Chlorophyceae, Chrysophyceae, and Dinophyceae. Rickettsiales, originally identified as obligate intracellular bacteria in metazoans, are now recognized as extensive endosymbionts in diverse protists. For example, *Candidatus Phycorickettsia*, a novel member of the Rickettsiaceae family, has been found infecting eustigmatophytes, a class of stramenopile algae. These recent findings shed light on endosymbiosis, revealing that eustigmatophytes host *Candidatus Phycorickettsia* as endosymbionts and have acquired certain genes through horizontal gene transfer (*Woyke & Schulz, 2019*).

### **Inhibition**

Some bacteria can directly inhibit algae growth through diverse mechanisms. For instance, *Croceibacter atlanticus* can hinder the division of

the diatom *Thalassiosira pseudonana* by disrupting cytokinesis, resulting in elongated cells and polyploidy. *Streptomyces iranensis* induces algal cell death using azalomycin F. Various algaecidal bacteria from Bacteroidetes or Gammaproteobacteria secrete substances like proteases or algaecides, including *Bdellovibrio*, *Kordia algicida*, and *Bacillus subtilis*. Conversely, certain algae from different taxonomic groups, like chlorophyceans, trebouxiophyceans, and xanthophyceans, release substances inhibiting bacterial growth. This complex interaction highlights the intricate regulatory mechanisms in bacterial-algal interactions in aquatic environments (*Zhang et al., 2020*).

### **Competition**

Phytoplankton and bacteria engage in competitive interactions over nutrients, with phytoplankton sometimes utilizing bacterial algicides. Gause's law suggests challenges for microorganisms in shared niches due to competition. Bacteroidetes such as *Kordia algicida* infect diatoms, causing cell lysis, countered by algal proteases. *Croceibacter atlanticus* inhibits diatom division and induces plastid accumulation. Bacteria competing for excreted organic carbon (EOC) increase mineral nutrient uptake, leading to competition with phytoplankton, especially under limited nutrients. Phosphorus competition may shift to mutualism under steady-state conditions, but intense competition limits bacterial growth. Algae compete with nitrifiers for nutrients, affecting growth rates. Certain bacteria, like *Croceibacter atlanticus* and *Streptomyces iranensis*, directly inhibit algal growth by impeding division or producing toxins (*Krug et al. 2020*).

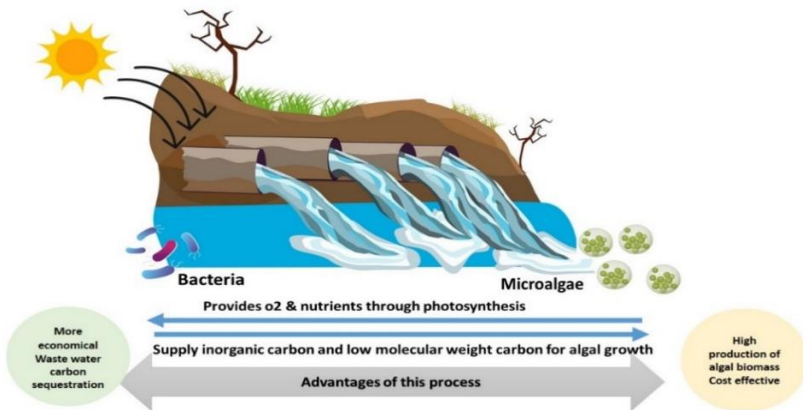
### **Algal-Bacterial Consortium's Working Action in the Context of Treating Wastewater**

Within the realm of wastewater treatment, there is a multifaceted symbiotic association between microalgae and bacteria. Bacteria break down organic substances in wastewater, providing carbon dioxide for microalgae photosynthesis. Microalgae, in turn, generate oxygen via the process of photosynthesis, decreasing reliance on oxygenation requirements. This collaboration extends to nutrient utilization, enhancing wastewater quality. Co-culturing immobilizes microalgae, aiding biomass settling during outflow (*Mu et al., 2021*). Compared to conventional methods, co-culturing with other microorganisms offers a more efficient and chemical-free approach. This method promotes spherical morphology in algal cells, improving mass transfer rates and mechanical stability. Separation of resulting cell pellets reduces operational costs. Many algal species within these consortia are suitable for wastewater treatment (Table1).

**Table 1:** Employing algae-bacteria partnerships for specific wastewater treatment.

Variety of wastewater	Variety of Algae	Variety of Bacteria	Reference
Agricultural	<i>Chlorella vulgaris</i>	Microbacterium	Wang et al., 2020
Artificial sewage	<i>Chlorella sorokiniana</i>	Biological floc	Fan et al., 2020
Domestic effluent	<i>Selenastrum bibraianum</i>	Microbial flora	Van Do et al., 2020
Household sewage	<i>Chlorella variabilis</i>	<i>Nitrobacter winogradskyi</i>	Luo et al., 2020
Household	<i>Chlorella vulgaris</i>	<i>Nitrosomonas europaea</i>	Luo et al., 2020

Additionally, microalgae contribute to nutrient removal by producing compounds for bioenergy, addressing future energy challenges. However, challenges in biofuel generation include the recovery of soluble catalysts and solvent loss during recovery processes (Chu et al., 2021). Existing studies demonstrate the potential efficiency of microalgae–bacterial consortium systems for treating different wastewaters. The mutualistic bond shared by bacteria and algae can be mutualistic, commensalistic, or parasitic, influencing nutrient utilization and renewable energy production. (Fig -2).



**Fig 2:** Illustrate algae bacterial consortia for waste water treatments

### Present Challenges and Prospects Ahead

Research on Microbial symbiosis often prioritizes promoting algae growth over understanding antagonistic interactions. Limited co-culture systems hinder studying these interactions fully. Our grasp of chemical

exchange and Quorum Sensing (QS) remains incomplete. Most studies use lab-controlled systems with synthetic wastewater and short durations, limiting real-world applicability. Future research should use microscopy and omics approaches to investigate interactions intensively. Understanding molecular-level chemical signaling and nutrient exchange in natural conditions is vital. Machine learning can improve tracking interactions for better Sewage purification. Incorporating some sophisticated methodologies like MBRs and Ultraviolet light decomposition using algae-bacterial symbiotic systems can enhance environmental longevity and industrial application of wastewater management.

## Conclusions

The research on Algal-bacterial partnerships has emphasized microbial synergies and their practical implementations, with limited exploration of their use in aquatic remediation. *Chlorella* sp. is a prevalent algal species in these consortia, showing promise for wastewater treatment. Interactions include mutualistic, commensal, and parasitic relationships exhibited by algae and bacteria are observed in various ecological niches. Understanding their metabolic exchanges is crucial for nutrient cycling in natural environments. Microbial collaboration possess promise for water purification through processes like bioadsorption and bioconversion. Machine learning methods can aid in predicting treatment process performance and optimizing conditions due to the complexity of their symbiotic relationship. Additionally, the synergy between algae and exo-electrogenic Bacteria display effectiveness in converting organic wastewater substrates into electrical energy, suggesting potential for algae-based Microbial Fuel Cell (MFC) systems with minimal energy input.

## References

1. Bankston, E., Wang, Q., & Higgins, B. T. (2020). Algae support populations of heterotrophic, nitrifying, and phosphate-accumulating bacteria in the treatment of poultry litter anaerobic digestate. *Chemical Engineering Journal*, 398, 125550.
2. Chen, Y. D., Liu, F., Ren, N. Q., & Ho, S. H. (2020). Revolutions in algal biochar for different applications: State-of-the-art techniques and future scenarios. *Chinese Chemical Letters*, 31(10), 2591-2602.
3. Chu, R., Li, S., Zhu, L., Yin, Z., Hu, D., Liu, C., & Mo, F. (2021). A review on co-cultivation of microalgae with filamentous fungi: Efficient harvesting, wastewater treatment and biofuel production. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 139, 110689.

4. Fan, J., Chen, Y., Zhang, T. C., Ji, B., & Cao, L. (2020). Performance of *Chlorella sorokiniana*-activated sludge consortium treating wastewater under light-limited heterotrophic condition. *Chemical Engineering Journal*, 382, 122799.
5. Jiang, L., Li, Y., & Pei, H. (2021). Algal–bacterial consortia for bioproduct generation and wastewater treatment. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 149, 111395.
6. Krug, L., Erlacher, A., Markut, K., Berg, G., & Cernava, T. (2020). The microbiome of alpine snow algae shows a specific inter-kingdom connectivity and algae-bacteria interactions with supportive capacities. *The ISME journal*, 14(9), 2197-2210.
7. Li, S., Li, X., & Ho, S. H. (2022). Microalgae as a solution of third world energy crisis for biofuels production from wastewater toward carbon neutrality: An updated review. *Chemosphere*, 291, 132863.
8. Lin, C., Cao, P., Xu, X., & Ye, B. (2019). Algal-bacterial symbiosis system treating high-load printing and dyeing wastewater in continuous-flow reactors under natural light. *Water*, 11(3), 469.
9. Luo, S., Waller, L., Badgley, B., He, Z., & Young, E. B. (2020). Effects of bacterial inoculation and nitrogen loading on bacterial-algal consortium composition and functions in an integrated photobioelectrochemical system. *Science of the Total Environment*, 716, 137135.
10. Mu, R., Jia, Y., Ma, G., Liu, L., Hao, K., Qi, F., & Shao, Y. (2021). Advances in the use of microalgal–bacterial consortia for wastewater treatment: Community structures, interactions, economic resource reclamation, and study techniques. *Water Environment Research*, 93(8), 1217-1230.
11. Nambiar, K. R., & Bokil, S. D. (1981). Luxury uptake of nitrogen in flocculating algal-bacterial system. *Water Research*, 15(6), 667-669.
12. Rocuzzo, S., Beckerman, A. P., & Trögl, J. (2021). New perspectives on the bioremediation of endocrine disrupting compounds from wastewater using algae-, bacteria-and fungi-based technologies. *International Journal of Environmental Science and Technology*, 18, 89-106.
13. Van Do, T. C., Nguyen, T. N. T., Tran, D. T., & Le, T. G. (2020). Semi-continuous removal of nutrients and biomass production from domestic wastewater in raceway reactors using *Chlorella variabilis* TH03-bacteria consortia. *Environmental Technology & Innovation*, 20, 101172.

14. Wang, Y., Wang, S., Sun, L., Sun, Z., & Li, D. (2020). Screening of a *Chlorella*-bacteria consortium and research on piggery wastewater purification. *Algal Research*, 47, 101840.
15. Woyke, T., & Schulz, F. (2019). Entities inside one another-a matryoshka doll in biology?. *Environmental microbiology reports*, 11(1), 26.
16. Zhang, H., Gong, W., Bai, L., Chen, R., Zeng, W., Yan, Z.,... & Liang, H. (2020). Aeration-induced CO<sub>2</sub> stripping, instead of high dissolved oxygen, have a negative impact on algae–bacteria symbiosis (ABS) system stability and wastewater treatment efficiency. *Chemical Engineering Journal*, 382, 122957.





## **Chapter - 8**

### **Decoding Food Spoilage: Microbial Culprits and Mechanisms**

#### **Authors**

##### **Diksha Adhikari**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Bidisha Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Subhasis Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Suranjana Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 8

## Decoding Food Spoilage: Microbial Culprits and Mechanisms

Diksha Adhikari, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar

### Abstract

Food spoilage poses a pervasive challenge to food quality and safety, primarily driven by microbial activity. This abstract offers an overview of the key microorganisms responsible for food spoilage and their underlying mechanisms. Bacteria, yeasts, and molds are the primary offenders, each employing distinct metabolic pathways to degrade food components and induce undesirable changes in taste, odor, texture, and appearance. Bacterial spoilage is commonly attributed to species such as *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, and Lactic Acid Bacteria, thriving in oxygen-rich environments and secreting enzymes that degrade proteins, lipids, and carbohydrates. Yeasts, particularly *Saccharomyces* and *Candida* species, contribute to fermentative spoilage, generating ethanol, carbon dioxide, and off-flavors. Molds, including *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium*, and *Fusarium* species, flourish in low-moisture environments, releasing enzymes that degrade food matrices and produce toxins. Understanding the microbial ecology of food spoilage is crucial for implementing effective preservation strategies and ensuring food safety. Molecular techniques have facilitated the identification and characterization of spoilage microorganisms, enabling targeted interventions to mitigate spoilage and extend the shelf life of perishable foods. This abstract underscores the importance of microbial control measures in food production and highlights ongoing research endeavors to combat food spoilage through interdisciplinary approaches.

**Keywords:** Bacteria, Food spoilage, Microorganisms, Spoilage, Yeasts

### Introduction

In contemporary times, the preservation and safety of food products represent critical concerns, not only for economic reasons but also for public health considerations. Despite notable progress in food preservation technologies, the challenge of food spoilage persists, resulting in economic losses and potential health hazards. The primary perpetrators responsible for

food spoilage are microbial organisms, comprising bacteria, fungi, and yeast, which thrive on food substrates and bring about alterations in appearance, texture, odor, and flavor. A profound comprehension of these microbial culprits and the underlying mechanisms of food spoilage is imperative for formulating efficacious strategies to mitigate its repercussions. Food contamination by microbes can transpire at various junctures, encompassing production, processing, storage, and distribution. Factors such as inadequate sanitation practices, inappropriate storage conditions, and insufficient preservation methods can exacerbate microbial proliferation and expedite food spoilage. Among the diverse array of microorganisms implicated in food spoilage, certain species exhibit remarkable adaptability to environmental conditions and possess enzymatic machinery capable of degrading food components, thereby precipitating deterioration.

The mechanisms through which microbes induce food spoilage are multifaceted and frequently involve enzymatic activities that degrade proteins, lipids, and carbohydrates present in food matrices. Proteolytic enzymes synthesized by microbial species can catalyze the breakdown of proteins, resulting in off-flavors, alterations in texture, and structural degradation. Lipolytic enzymes contribute to the hydrolysis of fats, leading to rancidity and undesirable odors (Lorenzo *et al.*, 2018). Additionally, enzymes involved in carbohydrate metabolism facilitate the fermentation of sugars, yielding organic acids, gases, and alcohol, which modify the sensory attributes of food. Advancements in microbiological techniques, molecular biology, and bioinformatics have facilitated the elucidation of the intricate interactions between microorganisms and food substrates at a molecular level. High-throughput sequencing technologies have provided insights into the composition and dynamics of microbial communities associated with food spoilage, disclosing the presence of both cultivable and uncultivable species. Furthermore, genome sequencing and metagenomic analyses have expedited the identification of genes encoding enzymes participating in food degradation pathways, offering prospects for targeted interventions to preclude spoilage (Karanth *et al.*, 2023; Snyder *et al.*, 2024).

## **Composition of Food**

This paper delves into the intricate scientific details concerning the composition of food, encapsulating macronutrients, micronutrients, water, and non-nutrient compounds, to elucidate their indispensable roles in human nutrition and health. Macronutrients, such as carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, stand as the primary sources of energy and essential building blocks for cellular processes. Carbohydrates, manifesting as sugars, starches, and fibers,

provide metabolic fuel, while proteins, consisting of amino acids, contribute to tissue repair, enzymatic functions, and immune responses. Fats, comprised of triglycerides and other lipids, not only serve as concentrated energy reservoirs but also play pivotal roles in cellular structure and signaling pathways.

Micronutrients, including vitamins and minerals, are indispensable for various biochemical reactions and physiological functions. Vitamins, organic compounds, serve as coenzymes, antioxidants, and regulators of gene expression, supporting diverse metabolic processes and overall health. Minerals, essential inorganic elements, bolster bone health, nerve transmission, and enzyme activity, ensuring the proper operation of bodily systems. Water, a fundamental constituent of all living organisms, assumes a crucial role in hydration, nutrient transport, temperature regulation, and waste elimination. Its presence in foods and beverages is indispensable for maintaining physiological equilibrium and supporting vital bodily functions. Non-nutrient compounds, encompassing phytochemicals, antinutrients, and additives, further enrich the complexity of food composition. Phytochemicals, prevalent in plant-based foods, showcase antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anticancer properties, contributing to the health advantages associated with plant-centric diets. Antinutrients, naturally occurring compounds in select plant foods, may impede nutrient absorption or utilization, underscoring the significance of dietary diversity and balanced intake. Additives, meticulously regulated substances integrated into food during processing, heighten flavor, texture, appearance, and shelf life, ensuring food safety and quality (Delgado *et al.*, 2021; Yeung *et al.*, 2023).

## **Food Spoilage**

Food spoilage by microorganisms is a multifaceted process governed by several scientific principles (Kaczmarek *et al.*, 2019; Odeyemi *et al.*, 2020; Zhu *et al.*, 2022):

### **Microbial Growth**

Microorganisms, including bacteria, fungi, and yeast, have specific requirements for growth, such as temperature, pH, moisture, and nutrient availability. Bacteria typically proliferate across a broad range of conditions, with optimal growth occurring between 20°C and 45°C and near-neutral pH levels. Fungi and yeast thrive in slightly acidic to neutral pH conditions and can tolerate lower moisture levels. When these conditions are met, microorganisms undergo rapid multiplication through binary fission or budding, leading to visible signs of spoilage.

## **Enzymatic Activity**

Microorganisms produce a diverse array of enzymes that catalyze biochemical reactions involved in breaking down food components. Proteolytic enzymes, including proteases and proteinases, hydrolyze peptide bonds in proteins, resulting in the formation of peptides and amino acids. Lipolytic enzymes, such as lipases and phospholipases, break down lipids into fatty acids and glycerol. Carbohydrases, including amylases and cellulases, degrade complex carbohydrates into simpler sugars. These enzymatic activities lead to changes in the texture, flavor, odor, and appearance of the food.

## **Production of Metabolites**

Microorganisms metabolize nutrients present in food substrates to produce various metabolites. During fermentation, certain microorganisms produce organic acids, such as lactic acid, acetic acid, and citric acid, which lower the pH of the food and impart sour or tangy flavors. Alcohols, such as ethanol and methanol, contribute to the aroma and taste of fermented foods. Additionally, the production of gases, such as carbon dioxide and hydrogen sulfide, can cause bloating or swelling of the food matrix, altering its texture and structure.

## **Components Targeted by Microbes**

Microorganisms possess the capability to utilize various components present in food as sources of energy and nutrients for their growth and proliferation. These components encompass:

### **Carbohydrates**

Microbes can metabolize carbohydrates, including sugars, starches, and fibers, through processes such as glycolysis and fermentation. Sugars like glucose, fructose, and sucrose serve as readily available energy sources for microbial growth. Starches, found in grains, potatoes, and root vegetables, undergo enzymatic breakdown into simpler sugars before being utilized by microorganisms. Fiber, although indigestible by humans, can be fermented by certain gut microbes, contributing to their growth and metabolic activities.

### **Proteins**

Microorganisms possess enzymatic machinery to break down complex proteins into amino acids, serving as building blocks for cellular proteins and as carbon and nitrogen sources for microbial growth. Proteins sourced from animals and plants in food are susceptible to degradation by proteolytic enzymes produced by microorganisms, enabling their utilization.

## **Lipids**

Lipids, comprising fats and oils, can be metabolized by microorganisms through enzymatic hydrolysis. Microbes produce lipases that catalyze the breakdown of triglycerides into fatty acids and glycerol, which can then serve as carbon and energy sources for microbial growth.

## **Vitamins and Minerals**

Microorganisms require vitamins and minerals for various metabolic processes and enzymatic reactions. While some microbes can synthesize certain vitamins, others rely on obtaining them from the surrounding environment, including food sources. Minerals, such as iron, magnesium, zinc, and calcium, act as essential cofactors for enzymes involved in microbial metabolism.

## **Water**

Water plays a pivotal role in microbial growth and metabolism, acting as a solvent for nutrients and facilitating biochemical reactions. Microorganisms acquire water from the food matrix or surrounding environment to maintain cellular hydration and support metabolic processes.

## **Microbes in Food Spoilage**

The major groups of microorganisms that are involved in food spoilage are discussed as followed (Lorenzo *et al.*, 2018; Cao *et al.*, 2023):

### **Bacteria**

**Gram-negative bacteria:** This group comprises various genera such as *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter*, and *Escherichia coli*. *Pseudomonas* species are widespread in nature and often contaminate foods with high moisture content, including meat, fish, and vegetables. They produce enzymes that degrade proteins and lipids, causing off-flavors, odors, and slime formation. *Enterobacter* species can spoil dairy products, canned foods, and vegetables, leading to gas production and texture changes. While *Escherichia coli* is primarily known as a pathogen, certain strains can contribute to food spoilage, particularly in meats and dairy.

**Gram-positive bacteria:** Lactic acid bacteria are prevalent in fermented foods and include genera such as *Lactobacillus*, *Leuconostoc*, and *Streptococcus*. These bacteria ferment carbohydrates, producing lactic acid, which lowers the pH and imparts sourness. While beneficial in some foods, lactic acid fermentation can cause spoilage in others, leading to texture changes, gas production, and acidity.



Spore-forming bacteria: *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* species form resilient spores, allowing them to survive adverse conditions and contaminate a variety of foods. These bacteria can spoil canned goods, vacuum-packaged products, and dried foods, leading to gas production, off-flavors, and texture changes upon germination.

## **Fungi**

Molds: *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium*, and *Fusarium* are common molds involved in food spoilage. They grow on a variety of foods, including bread, fruits, and dairy products, producing visible mycelial growth and off-flavors. Molds secrete enzymes that degrade carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids, resulting in spoilage and the production of mycotoxins.

Yeasts: Yeasts ferment sugars to produce ethanol and carbon dioxide, contributing to spoilage in fruit juices, bakery products, and sweet spreads. *Saccharomyces*, *Candida*, and *Zygosaccharomyces* species are common spoilage yeasts that produce off-flavors, gas, and alcohol, affecting taste, texture, and appearance.

## **Viruses**

Bacteriophages: These viruses infect bacteria and can contribute to spoilage in fermented foods and dairy products. Bacteriophages replicate within bacterial hosts, leading to their lysis and release of cell contents, which can negatively impact product quality.

## **Food Borne Infection**

Food borne infections, also known as foodborne illnesses or food poisoning, arise when individuals ingest food or beverages contaminated with pathogenic microorganisms or their toxins. These infections can induce a range of symptoms, from mild gastrointestinal discomfort to severe illness and even fatalities in extreme instances. Numerous common pathogens are accountable for causing foodborne infections:

### **Bacteria**

***Salmonella*:** *Salmonella* species, including *Salmonella enterica*, are among the principal culprits of foodborne infections globally. Commonly found in foods of animal origin, such as poultry, eggs, and dairy products, salmonella contamination can lead to symptoms like diarrhea, abdominal cramps, fever, and vomiting.

***Escherichia coli (E. coli)*:** Certain strains of *E. coli*, such as *E. coli* O157:H7, produce toxins that induce severe illness. Ingestion of contaminated beef, raw vegetables, and unpasteurized dairy products can result in symptoms

ranging from mild gastrointestinal discomfort to bloody diarrhea and kidney failure.

***Campylobacter:*** *Campylobacter jejuni* is a major cause of bacterial gastroenteritis globally, often associated with the consumption of undercooked poultry, unpasteurized milk, and contaminated water. Symptoms of campylobacteriosis include diarrhea (often bloody), abdominal pain, fever, and nausea.

***Listeria monocytogenes:*** *Listeria* contamination is frequently encountered in ready-to-eat foods, deli meats, soft cheeses, and unpasteurized dairy products. Listeriosis can cause severe illness, particularly in vulnerable populations like pregnant women, newborns, the elderly, and individuals with compromised immune systems.

***Clostridium botulinum:*** *Clostridium botulinum* produces botulinum toxin, resulting in botulism, a rare yet potentially life-threatening illness. Improperly canned or preserved foods, especially low-acid foods like vegetables and meats, can harbor botulinum spores. Symptoms of botulism include blurred vision, muscle weakness, paralysis, and respiratory failure.

## Viruses

***Norovirus:*** *Norovirus* is highly contagious and often spreads through contaminated food, water, or surfaces. Outbreaks frequently occur in settings such as cruise ships, restaurants, and schools, with symptoms including vomiting, diarrhea, nausea, abdominal cramps, and fever.

**Hepatitis A virus:** Hepatitis A can transmit through contaminated food or water, particularly in areas with inadequate sanitation. Symptoms comprise jaundice, fatigue, nausea, abdominal pain, and fever.

## Protozoa

***Toxoplasma gondii:*** *Toxoplasma* infection, caused by the parasite *Toxoplasma gondii*, is commonly linked to undercooked or raw meat, contaminated fruits and vegetables, and exposure to cat feces. Infection during pregnancy can lead to severe complications for the fetus.

***Cryptosporidium:*** *Cryptosporidium parvum* and *Cryptosporidium hominis* are waterborne parasites capable of contaminating food and causing gastrointestinal illness, particularly in immunocompromised individuals.

## Preventive Measures

Preventing foodborne infections entails practicing good food safety measures, such as proper food handling, thorough cooking, avoiding cross-

contamination, frequent hand and surface washing, and consuming pasteurized dairy products and thoroughly washed fruits and vegetables. Regulatory agencies and public health organizations play a pivotal role in monitoring food safety, investigating outbreaks, and implementing preventive measures to mitigate the incidence of foodborne illnesses. The preventive measures are explained as followed (Teshome *et al.*, 2022);

**Food Safety Education:** Disseminating knowledge about proper food handling practices is essential. This includes comprehensive training on hand hygiene, preventing cross-contamination between raw and cooked foods, adhering to appropriate cooking temperatures, and ensuring the safe storage of perishable items. Educational initiatives should also focus on high-risk foods and vulnerable populations to enhance awareness and compliance with food safety protocols.

**Good Agricultural Practices (GAPs):** Implementing GAPs in agriculture is crucial for minimizing microbial contamination of fresh produce. This involves meticulous sanitation, effective water management, pest control measures, and adherence to stringent hygiene practices during planting, harvesting, and post-harvest handling. Ensuring the cleanliness of equipment, proper waste disposal, and maintaining water quality standards are paramount to preventing contamination at the source.

**Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP):** Employing the HACCP approach enables systematic hazard identification, evaluation, and control throughout the food processing chain. By meticulously analyzing critical points in production and processing, HACCP plans facilitate the identification and mitigation of potential food safety hazards, including microbial contamination, thereby ensuring the safety and integrity of food products.

**Regulatory Oversight:** Regulatory agencies play a pivotal role in establishing and enforcing stringent food safety standards. The implementation and enforcement of regulations governing food production, processing, labeling, and distribution are essential for upholding food safety standards. Regular inspections of food establishments, robust monitoring of foodborne illness outbreaks, and rigorous enforcement of food safety laws are fundamental to safeguarding public health and consumer confidence.

**Food Hygiene Practices:** Adherence to stringent hygiene practices during food handling and preparation is imperative for preventing foodborne infections. This encompasses thorough handwashing with soap and water before and after handling food, particularly after using the restroom or

handling raw meat. Maintaining cleanliness and sanitization of utensils, cutting boards, countertops, and food preparation surfaces is essential to mitigate the risk of cross-contamination.

**Proper Cooking and Storage:** Properly cooking food to the recommended internal temperatures is pivotal for eliminating harmful bacteria and pathogens. The use of food thermometers to ensure that meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs are cooked to the appropriate temperatures is essential for food safety. Additionally, the proper storage of perishable items in refrigerators or freezers at optimal temperatures can effectively inhibit bacterial growth and extend the shelf life of foods.

**Safe Water Supply:** Access to safe and clean drinking water is paramount for preventing waterborne diseases transmitted through contaminated food. Rigorous treatment and disinfection of water sources, routine testing for microbial contaminants, and meticulous maintenance of water distribution systems are imperative to ensure the provision of safe drinking water to communities and mitigate the risk of waterborne illnesses.

## **Food Preservation**

Food preservation is the process of extending the shelf life of food products by inhibiting microbial growth, enzymatic activity, and other deteriorative processes that lead to spoilage. The aim of food preservation methods is to maintain the safety, quality, and nutritional value of foods, thus reducing food waste and ensuring food security. There are various techniques used for food preservation, each suited to different types of foods and preservation goals, explained as following (Saini *et al.*, 2021):

### **Heat Processing**

**Canning:** Canning involves heat-processing foods in sealed containers to destroy microorganisms and enzymes that cause spoilage. This process typically utilizes boiling water or steam to achieve sterilization before sealing the containers.

**Pasteurization:** Pasteurization is a heat treatment method used to heat foods such as milk, juice, and liquid eggs to a specific temperature for a defined period. This process aims to kill pathogens and reduce microbial load while preserving the sensory qualities of the food.

**Blanching:** Blanching is a short-duration heat treatment method where fruits and vegetables are submerged in boiling water or steam. This process aims to deactivate enzymes responsible for spoilage and maintain the food's color, texture, and nutritional value before freezing or drying.

## Low-Temperature Preservation

**Refrigeration:** Refrigeration slows down microbial growth and enzymatic reactions by maintaining foods at temperatures between 0°C and 5°C. It is effective for preserving perishable foods such as meats, dairy products, fruits, and vegetables.

**Freezing:** Freezing inhibits microbial growth and enzymatic activity by lowering the temperature below freezing point, typically to -18°C or lower. Freezing preserves the texture, flavor, and nutritional value of foods and is suitable for a wide range of products, including meats, seafood, fruits, vegetables, and prepared meals.

## Drying/Dehydration

**Sun Drying:** Sun drying involves exposing foods to sunlight to remove moisture and inhibit microbial growth. This traditional preservation method is commonly used for fruits, vegetables, herbs, and meat in regions with hot and dry climates.

**Mechanical Drying:** Mechanical drying methods, such as air drying, oven drying, and freeze-drying, remove moisture from foods using controlled airflow, heat, or vacuum. These methods preserve foods by inhibiting microbial growth and enzymatic activity while maintaining color, flavor, and nutritional quality.

## Fermentation

Fermentation involves the conversion of sugars and carbohydrates in foods into organic acids, alcohol, and other compounds by beneficial microorganisms, such as lactic acid bacteria, yeast, and molds. Fermentation preserves foods through acidification, alcohol production, and the production of antimicrobial compounds, enhancing flavor and digestibility. Fermented foods include yogurt, cheese, sauerkraut, kimchi, pickles, and fermented meats.

## Chemical Preservation

**Acidification:** Acidification involves the addition of acids, such as vinegar, citric acid, or lactic acid, to foods to lower the pH and inhibit microbial growth. Acidification is commonly used in pickling, canning, and preserving fruits, vegetables, and condiments.

**Use of Preservatives:** Food-grade preservatives, such as salt, sugar, nitrites, sulfites, and antioxidants, are added to foods to inhibit microbial growth, prevent oxidation, and extend shelf life. Preservatives are used in a

variety of processed foods, including cured meats, canned goods, baked goods, and beverages.

## **Packaging and Modified Atmosphere**

**Vacuum Packaging:** Vacuum packaging involves removing air from food packaging to create a vacuum-sealed environment, inhibiting the growth of aerobic microorganisms and oxidative reactions. Vacuum packaging extends the shelf life of perishable foods such as meats, cheeses, and seafood.

**Modified Atmosphere Packaging (MAP):** MAP involves modifying the atmosphere within food packaging by replacing oxygen with inert gases such as nitrogen and carbon dioxide to slow down microbial growth and enzymatic activity. MAP extends the shelf life of fresh produce, meats, and bakery products while preserving color, texture, and flavor.

## **Nanotechnology and Food Preservation**

Ensuring food safety, quality, and availability has always hinged on effective preservation techniques. Traditional methods like refrigeration, canning, drying, fermentation, and pickling have long been utilized to extend the shelf life of food products. Refrigeration and freezing help slow down microbial growth and enzymatic reactions, while canning involves sealing food in airtight containers and heating them to eliminate microorganisms, enabling long-term storage without refrigeration. Drying removes moisture to prevent the growth of bacteria, yeast, and mold, and fermentation uses beneficial microorganisms to convert sugars into acids, alcohol, and carbon dioxide, thereby preserving food and enhancing its flavor and nutritional value. Pickling involves preserving food in an acidic solution to prevent spoilage.

Nanotechnology, which manipulates matter at the nanoscale, opens up new possibilities for enhancing these traditional methods and developing innovative approaches to food preservation. Nano-encapsulation can be employed for active packaging, where nanoparticles release antimicrobial agents or antioxidants in response to environmental triggers, and for controlled release, which allows for the gradual release of preservatives, flavors, and nutrients. Nanocomposite packaging materials can greatly improve barrier properties against gases, moisture, and light, thus maintaining food freshness and enhancing mechanical strength and flexibility. Nanosensors can monitor food quality in real time by detecting changes in temperature, pH, and the presence of pathogens or spoilage indicators, with smart labels providing visual indicators of the food's freshness or spoilage status. Nanoemulsions containing nanoparticles with antimicrobial properties can be applied as

coatings on food surfaces to prevent microbial growth, while edible nanocoatings offer a barrier against moisture and gases and can carry antimicrobial agents or nutrients. The incorporation of nanotechnology in food preservation presents considerable potential for extending shelf life, enhancing food safety, and reducing waste. However, challenges such as regulatory approval, consumer acceptance, and the cost and scalability of nanotechnology in food preservation processes need to be addressed. Ultimately, nanotechnology holds significant promise for revolutionizing food preservation techniques, ensuring food safety, quality, and availability, and contributing to a more sustainable and efficient food system (Sridhar *et al.*, 2021):

### **Future Prospect**

Future prospects in food preservation appear promising with ongoing advancements in technology and research, aimed at refining preservation methods, enhancing food safety, and mitigating food waste. These potential avenues encompass exploring emerging preservation technologies such as pulsed electric fields, high-pressure processing, and cold plasma treatment, which offer opportunities for prolonging shelf life while preserving taste, texture, and nutritional content. Additionally, the application of nanotechnology in food packaging materials and coatings presents possibilities for creating active and intelligent packaging systems capable of detecting and responding to changes in the food environment. Biopreservation methods utilizing beneficial microorganisms, enzymes, and antimicrobial compounds are gaining traction as natural alternatives to conventional preservatives. The development of smart packaging solutions equipped with sensors and indicators enables real-time monitoring of food quality, safety, and freshness, thereby contributing to the reduction of food waste and bolstering consumer confidence. Precision preservation techniques, empowered by data analytics and artificial intelligence, optimize preservation parameters for maximal quality and minimal waste. Sustainable preservation practices prioritize energy-efficient processing methods, renewable resources, and eco-friendly packaging materials to minimize environmental impact. Collaborative efforts and knowledge exchange initiatives on a global scale foster innovation and drive advancements in food preservation practices, ensuring a sustainable and resilient food supply for generations to come.

### **Conclusion**

In conclusion, the future of food preservation is on a trajectory of significant advancement, propelled by innovations in technology, research, and sustainable practices. Emerging preservation methods such as pulsed

electric fields, high-pressure processing, and cold plasma treatment offer promising avenues for extending shelf life while preserving the quality and safety of food products. These methods show potential in addressing various mechanisms of food spoilage, including microbial growth, enzymatic activity, and oxidative processes. Moreover, the integration of nanotechnology into packaging materials facilitates the development of intelligent packaging systems capable of real-time monitoring and responding to environmental changes, thereby reducing food waste and enhancing consumer confidence. Biopreservation techniques, which harness beneficial microorganisms and natural compounds, further contribute to inhibiting spoilage and extending shelf life, aligning with the rising demand for clean label products. Precision preservation strategies, driven by data analytics and artificial intelligence, optimize processing parameters to maximize food quality and minimize waste across the supply chain. Sustainable preservation practices prioritize energy efficiency, renewable resources, and eco-friendly packaging materials, ensuring environmental responsibility alongside food security. Collaborative efforts and knowledge exchange initiatives on a global scale foster innovation and progress in food preservation practices, laying the foundation for a resilient and sustainable food supply for future generations. Embracing these opportunities and leveraging emerging technologies will enable us to effectively combat food spoilage, reduce food waste, and ensure access to safe and nutritious food for all.

## References

1. Cao, J., Wang, Y., Zhou, C., & Geng, F. (2023). Editorial: Insights into the role of microorganisms on food quality and food safety. *Frontiers in microbiology*, *14*, 1237508.
2. Delgado, A., Issaoui, M., Vieira, M. C., Saraiva de Carvalho, I., & Fardet, A. (2021). Food Composition Databases: Does It Matter to Human Health?. *Nutrients*, *13*(8), 2816.
3. Kaczmarek, M., Avery, S. V., & Singleton, I. (2019). Microbes associated with fresh produce: Sources, types and methods to reduce spoilage and contamination. *Advances in applied microbiology*, *107*, 29–82.
4. Karanth, S., Feng, S., Patra, D., & Pradhan, A. K. (2023). Linking microbial contamination to food spoilage and food waste: the role of smart packaging, spoilage risk assessments, and date labeling. *Frontiers in microbiology*, *14*, 1198124.
5. Lorenzo, J. M., Munekata, P. E., Dominguez, R., Pateiro, M., Saraiva, J. A., & Franco, D. (2018). Main Groups of Microorganisms of Relevance



- for Food Safety and Stability: General Aspects and Overall Description. *Innovative Technologies for Food Preservation*, 53–107
6. Odeyemi, O. A., Alegbeleye, O. O., Strateva, M., & Stratev, D. (2020). Understanding spoilage microbial community and spoilage mechanisms in foods of animal origin. *Comprehensive reviews in food science and food safety*, 19(2), 311–331.
  7. Saini, R. V., Vaid, P., Saini, N. K., Siwal, S. S., Gupta, V. K., Thakur, V. K., & Saini, A. K. (2021). Recent Advancements in the Technologies Detecting Food Spoiling Agents. *Journal of functional biomaterials*, 12(4), 67.
  8. Snyder, A. B., Martin, N., & Wiedmann, M. (2024). Microbial food spoilage: impact, causative agents and control strategies. *Nature reviews. Microbiology*, 10.1038/s41579-024-01037-x. Advance online publication.
  9. Sridhar, A., Ponnuchamy, M., Kumar, P. S., & Kapoor, A. (2021). Food preservation techniques and nanotechnology for increased shelf life of fruits, vegetables, beverages and spices: a review. *Environmental chemistry letters*, 19(2), 1715–1735.
  10. Teshome, E., Forsido, S. F., Rupasinghe, H. P. V., & Olika Keyata, E. (2022). Potentials of Natural Preservatives to Enhance Food Safety and Shelf Life: A Review. *TheScientificWorldJournal*, 2022, 9901018.
  11. Yeung A. W. K. (2023). Food Composition Databases (FCDBs): A Bibliometric Analysis. *Nutrients*, 15(16), 3548.
  12. Zhu, Y., Wang, W., Li, M., Zhang, J., Ji, L., Zhao, Z., Zhang, R., Cai, D., & Chen, L. (2022). Microbial diversity of meat products under spoilage and its controlling approaches. *Frontiers in nutrition*, 9, 1078201.

## **Chapter - 9**

### **Exploring the Role of Melatonin in Disease Prevention and Anti-Aging**

#### **Authors**

##### **Jhilik Das**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Bidisha Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Subhasis Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India

##### **Suranjana Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India



# Chapter - 9

## Exploring the Role of Melatonin in Disease Prevention and Anti-Aging

Jhilik Das, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar

### Abstract

Melatonin, known predominantly for its circadian rhythm regulation, has recently gained attention for its multifaceted physiological roles beyond sleep-wake cycles. This review examines the varied properties of melatonin and its potential implications in disease prevention and anti-aging. Melatonin demonstrates robust antioxidant capabilities, effectively scavenging free radicals and alleviating oxidative stress-induced cellular damage, pivotal in the aging process. Furthermore, it exhibits anti-inflammatory attributes, modulating immune responses and mitigating inflammatory pathways linked to chronic conditions and aging-related inflammation. Its immunomodulatory effects extend to bolstering immune function and regulating immune cell activity, contributing to overall health and longevity. Moreover, melatonin plays a pivotal role in regulating a spectrum of physiological functions, spanning metabolism, cardiovascular health, and neuroprotection. These functions are closely linked to the aging process and age-related illnesses. Recent findings suggest that melatonin may hold promise in mitigating age-associated ailments such as cardiovascular diseases, neurodegenerative disorders, cancer, and metabolic syndromes, potentially slowing down the aging trajectory. Moreover, melatonin's influence on improving sleep quality and circadian rhythm regulation contributes to overall health and well-being, essential components of anti-aging strategies. As our comprehension of melatonin's therapeutic mechanisms grows, it holds promise for developing preventive strategies and interventions to enhance public health and promote healthy aging. Exploring the multifaceted roles of melatonin in disease prevention and anti-aging offers valuable insights into its potential applications for extending healthspan and longevity.

**Keywords:** Anti-Aging, Antioxidant, Anti-inflammatory, Disease Prevention, Immunomodulatory, Melatonin

## Introduction

In contemporary scientific discourse, there exists a burgeoning interest in unraveling the intricacies of aging processes and exploring interventions aimed at mitigating its effects. This interest is propelled by societal advancements and the global demographic shift towards aging populations. Of particular scientific fascination is the nuanced biology underlying skin aging, a complex phenomenon that has captured the attention of researchers, particularly regarding its molecular mechanisms and potential therapeutic interventions. Simultaneously, the field of anti-aging medicine has emerged as a promising frontier for addressing age-related physiological decline and fostering healthy aging. Central to this pursuit is the quest for interventions designed to slow, halt, or even reverse the aging process and its associated manifestations, such as cellular senescence and tissue degeneration. However, amidst the enthusiasm surrounding anti-aging strategies, it is imperative to subject them to rigorous scientific scrutiny to distinguish evidence-based approaches from unsubstantiated claims. Recent scientific investigations have delved into the mechanistic intricacies and clinical implications of various anti-aging interventions, shedding light on their biological mechanisms and therapeutic potential. Notably, calorie restriction mimetics have garnered attention for their ability to modulate molecular pathways associated with caloric restriction, thereby conferring health benefits and potentially extending lifespan. Compounds such as metformin, rapamycin, and resveratrol have demonstrated promising anti-aging properties in preclinical studies, holding promise for translational research and clinical application. Furthermore, melatonin has emerged as a potent antioxidant hormone with intriguing anti-aging properties, particularly in its role in modulating cellular senescence and oxidative stress responses. Recent research has elucidated the molecular mechanisms through which melatonin exerts its anti-aging effects, including the upregulation of silent information regulator 1/Sirtuin 1 (SIRT1) and the attenuation of p53-mediated senescence pathways (Li *et al.*, 2021).

## Aging Mechanism

Aging is an intricate biological course of events marked by the decline of physiological functions over time. While the precise mechanisms governing aging remain incompletely understood, several theoretical frameworks have been proposed to explain its underlying processes (Mc Auley *et al.*, 2017; Li *et al.* 2021; Fraser *et al.*, 2022; Jurk and Passos, 2022):

**Genetic Theories:** These theories suggest that aging is intrinsically regulated by genetic factors. Some theories propose the existence of specific

genes or genetic pathways that control the aging process and determine an organism's lifespan. One theory, known as the telomere shortening hypothesis, proposes that the progressive reduction in telomere length, which are protective caps located at the ends of chromosomes, plays a role in cellular senescence and the aging process.

**Cellular Damage Theories:** These theories focus on the accumulation of cellular and molecular damage as a key aspect of aging. This damage can arise from various sources, including oxidative stress, genomic instability, protein misfolding, and inflammation. The free radicals producing reactive oxygen species (ROS) aid in oxidative damage to cellular components, contributing to the aging process.

**Mitochondrial Dysfunction:** Changes in mitochondrial function have been implicated in aging. The mitochondrial theory of aging suggests that mitochondrial abnormalities, such as mitochondrial DNA mutations and impaired bioenergetic capacity, lead to cellular dysfunction and age-related phenotypes.

**Hormonal fluctuations:** These are a common occurrence with aging, characterized by decreases in growth hormone, insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1), and sex hormones like estrogen and testosterone. These changes can impact numerous physiological functions, such as metabolism, immune response, and tissue maintenance, potentially influencing the aging process.

**Epigenetic Modification:** Additionally, epigenetic adjustments, such as variations in DNA methylation, histone modifications, and non-coding RNA expression, contribute to aging. These alterations regulate the patterns of gene expression, influencing cellular behavior and contributing to age-related transformations.

### **Role of Hormone in Anti-aging**

Anti-aging hormones, also known as longevity hormones, encompass a range of endogenous substances vital for modulating various physiological functions associated with aging. These hormones operate within complex signaling pathways, regulating cellular processes involved in growth, metabolism, tissue repair, and overall homeostasis. Key anti-aging hormones and their roles in promoting health and longevity include (Bocheva *et al.*, 2022; Martín Giménez *et al.*, 2022):

**Growth Hormone (GH):** GH, secreted by the anterior pituitary gland stimulates growth and development during childhood and adolescence. In adulthood, GH influences metabolism, protein synthesis, and cellular repair

mechanisms. It promotes tissue regeneration, including muscle and bone, and enhances skin elasticity and collagen production. Declining GH levels with age are linked to reduced muscle mass, increased adiposity, and impaired wound healing.

**Insulin-Like Growth Factor 1 (IGF-1):** IGF-1 is produced in the liver in response to GH stimulation, mediates many growth-promoting effects and tissue repair functions. It regulates cellular proliferation, differentiation, and survival, affecting organ systems such as skeletal muscle, bone, and the central nervous system. Adequate IGF-1 levels are crucial for muscle strength, bone density, and cognitive function.

**Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA):** DHEA, an adrenal steroid hormone, acts as a precursor to sex hormones like testosterone and estrogen. Declining DHEA levels with age prompt supplementation to mitigate hormonal imbalances. DHEA regulates immune functioning, inflammation, and protects cardiovascular fitness. It may also prevent neurodegenerative diseases and cognitive decline.

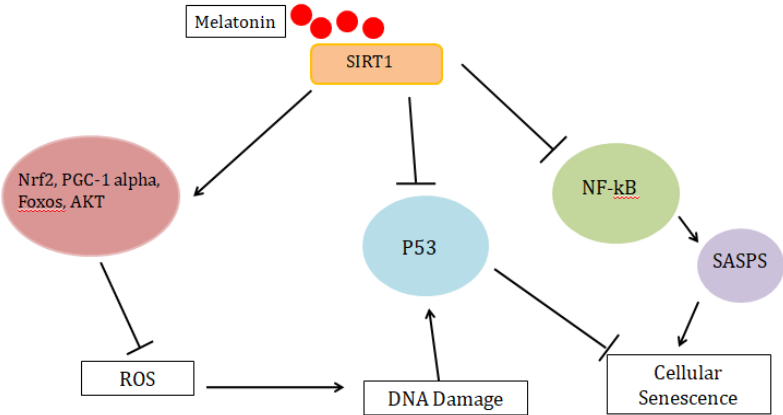
**Melatonin:** Synthesized by the pineal gland, melatonin regulates circadian rhythms and sleep-wake cycles. Beyond sleep regulation, melatonin exhibits antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, scavenging free radicals and modulating immune responses. Melatonin supplementation aims to enhance sleep quality, boost immune function, and mitigate age-related neurodegenerative diseases.

**Thyroid Hormones:** Thyroid hormones like thyroxine (T4) and triiodothyronine (T3) regulate metabolism, energy expenditure, and tissue homeostasis. Age-related changes in thyroid function impact metabolic rate, body composition, and energy levels. Thyroid hormone replacement therapy may restore metabolic function and alleviate symptoms of hypothyroidism.

### **Melatonin – Hormone of Darkness**

Melatonin, primarily produced in the pineal gland, serves multiple functions beyond its well-known role in regulating circadian rhythms. Recent scientific investigations have explored its complex mechanisms, revealing its potential as an anti-aging agent. A key aspect of melatonin's anti-aging properties lies in its strong antioxidant abilities. It directly scavenges free radicals, neutralizing reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) that contribute to oxidative stress, a hallmark of aging. Moreover, melatonin enhances the activity of antioxidant enzymes such as superoxide dismutase (SOD) and glutathione peroxidase (GPx), strengthening cellular defenses against oxidative damage. Apart from its antioxidative

properties, melatonin demonstrates anti-inflammatory effects crucial for mitigating age-related inflammation. It regulates various inflammatory pathways, including the nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) pathway, thereby reducing the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines like interleukin-6 (IL-6) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α). By mitigating chronic low-grade inflammation, melatonin helps reduce tissue damage and maintain organ function, contributing to healthy aging. Moreover, melatonin influences mitochondrial function, a pivotal factor in cellular vitality and longevity. It promotes mitochondrial biogenesis and enhances the activity of electron transport chain complexes, optimizing mitochondrial energy production while reducing oxidative stress. Additionally, melatonin interacts with mitochondrial permeability transition pores (mPTPs), regulating mitochondrial membrane stability and preventing apoptotic cell death associated with aging-related degenerative processes. Furthermore, melatonin exerts epigenetic regulation by modulating the activity of histone deacetylases (HDACs) and histone acetyltransferases (HATs), affecting gene expression patterns linked to aging and age-related diseases. Its epigenetic effects contribute to cellular homeostasis, DNA repair mechanisms, and stem cell function, crucial for maintaining tissue integrity and resilience during aging. Additionally, melatonin demonstrates neuroprotective properties by enhancing neurogenesis, synaptic plasticity, and neurotransmitter regulation in the brain (Anghel *et al.*, 2022; Samra *et al.*, 2023).



**Fig 1:** Role of Melatonin in Anti-Aging and Disease Prevention

**Multidimensional Role of Melatonin**

While melatonin shows promise in these areas, consultation with healthcare professional is vital prior to using melatonin supplements,



especially for long-term or high-dose supplementation, as it may interact with medications or have adverse effects in certain individuals. Beyond its sleep-regulating function, melatonin has gained attention for its potential therapeutic applications across various health conditions. Here are some key areas where melatonin is being utilized (Samra *et al.*, 2023):

**Sleep Disorders:** Melatonin supplements are frequently employed to address sleep disorders like insomnia and jet lag. By supplementing with melatonin, individuals may experience enhancements in sleep quality and reduced time to fall asleep.

**Circadian Rhythm Disorders:** Melatonin proves efficacious in managing circadian rhythm disorders like delayed sleep phase disorder (DSPD) and non-24-hour sleep-wake disorder. It facilitates the resetting of the body's internal clock, aligning sleep-wake cycles with the natural day-night rhythm.

**Shift Work Sleep Disorder:** Individuals working night shifts or irregular hours may experience disturbances in their sleep-wake cycle. Melatonin supplements can mitigate the negative effects of shift work by facilitating better sleep during the day and promoting alertness at night.

**Anxiety and Stress:** Melatonin possesses anxiolytic and stress-relieving properties, making it beneficial for individuals with anxiety disorders or high stress levels. It induces relaxation and calmness, leading to improved mood and reduced tension.

**Eye Health:** Studies suggest that melatonin may have protective effects on eye health due to its antioxidant properties. It assists in neutralizing free radicals, protecting retinal cells from oxidative harm, and potentially lowering the likelihood of age-related macular degeneration (AMD) and other ocular disorders.

**Immune Function:** Melatonin modulates immune function and is being investigated for its ability to enhance immune response and protect against infections. It regulates inflammatory processes and promotes immune cell production, supporting overall immune health.

**Anti-Aging:** Melatonin is under investigation for its potential anti-aging effects. As an antioxidant, it counters oxidative stress and may slow aging by protecting cells from oxidative stress induced damage.

## **Cancer Treatment**

Melatonin, renowned for its regulation of sleep-wake cycles, has emerged as a promising candidate for cancer treatment owing to its multifaceted

properties. Its antioxidant and antiproliferative effects are pivotal, as they help scavenge free radicals and induce apoptosis in cancer cells while impeding their growth pathways. Moreover, melatonin has shown potential in enhancing the efficacy of chemotherapy and radiotherapy, sensitizing cancer cells to treatment and reducing associated side effects. Its role in immune modulation, bolstering NK cell activity and cytokine production, contributes to the body's defense against cancerous cells. Melatonin also inhibits angiogenesis, hindering tumor growth and metastasis, while safeguarding healthy cells from therapy-induced toxicity. Combinatorial approaches with melatonin and other anti-cancer agents may yield synergistic effects, enhancing treatment outcomes. Despite promising preclinical findings, further clinical research is imperative to elucidate melatonin's mechanisms and optimize its therapeutic utility in cancer management. Individualized treatment strategies considering cancer type, stage, and patient characteristics will be crucial for realizing the full potential of melatonin in cancer therapy ().

### **Current Advancement**

The present state of melatonin research in the realm of anti-aging signifies a growing acknowledgment of its therapeutic potentials alongside an expanding corpus of scientific findings substantiating its effectiveness. Researchers are increasingly focusing on unraveling the molecular underpinnings of melatonin's anti-aging properties and translating these insights into practical applications. A multitude of preclinical investigations, spanning cell cultures and animal models, have presented compelling evidence showcasing melatonin's capacity to mitigate various facets of aging, encompassing oxidative stress, inflammation, mitochondrial dysfunction, and neurodegeneration (Ramos *et al.*, 2023). These studies underscore the diverse physiological impacts of melatonin and its potential to ameliorate age-related cellular deterioration while fostering longevity. In clinical exploration, melatonin supplementation has exhibited promising outcomes in enhancing sleep quality, bolstering cognitive function, and diminishing oxidative stress indicators among older individuals (Samec *et al.*, 2021). Although further extensive clinical trials are imperative to ascertain the long-term efficacy and safety of melatonin supplementation for anti-aging objectives, initial findings suggest its promise as a complementary strategy for promoting healthy aging. Moreover, melatonin's reputation as a well-tolerated and relatively benign supplement has contributed to its popularity among those seeking anti-aging interventions. Its accessibility as an over-the-counter supplement, coupled with its affordability, renders it attainable for a broad spectrum of individuals keen on bolstering their overall health and well-being (Talib *et al.*, 2021; Wang *et al.*, 2022).

## **Future Prospect**

The future prospects of melatonin in anti-aging research are promising, with anticipated advancements in both scientific understanding and clinical applications. In terms of scientific exploration, ongoing research is expected to delve deeper into the molecular mechanisms that underlie melatonin's anti-aging effects. This includes further investigation into its interactions with critical cellular pathways involved in aging processes, such as oxidative stress, inflammation, DNA damage, and mitochondrial dysfunction. Additionally, future studies may aim to identify specific melatonin receptors and signaling pathways implicated in its anti-aging properties, potentially leading to the development of targeted therapeutics. On the clinical front, future investigations may seek to broaden the scope of melatonin supplementation in mitigating age-related decline and promoting healthy aging. This could involve examining its potential preventive effects against age-related diseases like neurodegenerative disorders, cardiovascular disease, and metabolic syndromes. Furthermore, clinical trials might evaluate the effectiveness of melatonin supplementation in enhancing overall health outcomes and quality of life among aging populations. Advancements in drug delivery technologies may also play a role in the future development of melatonin formulations with improved bioavailability and targeted delivery to specific tissues or organs affected by aging. This could enhance the therapeutic efficacy of melatonin while minimizing potential side effects. Overall, the future of melatonin in anti-aging research holds promise for uncovering new insights into its mechanisms of action and expanding its therapeutic applications in promoting healthy aging and improving the quality of life for older adults. Continued interdisciplinary collaboration and research efforts will be crucial in realizing the full potential of melatonin as a valuable component of anti-aging interventions.

## **Conclusion**

Melatonin emerges as a multifaceted compound with significant potential for disease prevention. Its antioxidative, anti-inflammatory, immunomodulatory, and regulatory attributes position it as a formidable agent in sustaining overall health and mitigating the risk of various chronic illnesses. Melatonin's capacity to counteract free radicals, modulate immune responses, and regulate physiological functions underscores its pivotal role in shielding cells and tissues against oxidative stress, inflammation, and dysfunction. Ongoing research endeavors aimed at unraveling the intricate mechanisms underlying melatonin's actions fuel optimism about its therapeutic utility in preventing an array of diseases. Leveraging the therapeutic capacities of

melatonin may herald novel preventive measures and interventions aimed at fostering health and extending longevity.

## References

1. Anghel, L., Baroiu, L., Popazu, C. R., Pătraș, D., Fotea, S., Nechifor, A., Ciubara, A., Nechita, L., Mușat, C. L., Stefanopol, I. A., Tatu, A. L., & Ciubara, A. B. (2022). Benefits and adverse events of melatonin use in the elderly (Review). *Experimental and therapeutic medicine*, 23(3), 219.
2. Bocheva, G., Slominski, R. M., Janjetovic, Z., Kim, T. K., Böhm, M., Steinbrink, K., Reiter, R. J., Kleszczyński, K., & Slominski, A. T. (2022). Protective Role of Melatonin and Its Metabolites in Skin Aging. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 23(3), 1238.
3. Fraser, H. C., Kuan, V., Johnen, R., Zwierzyna, M., Hingorani, A. D., Beyer, A., & Partridge, L. (2022). Biological mechanisms of aging predict age-related disease co-occurrence in patients. *Aging cell*, 21(4), e13524.
4. Jurk, D., & Passos, J. F. (2022). Senolytic drugs: Beyond the promise and the hype. *Mechanisms of ageing and development*, 202, 111631.
5. Li, Z., Zhang, Z., Ren, Y., Wang, Y., Fang, J., Yue, H., Ma, S., & Guan, F. (2021). Aging and age-related diseases: from mechanisms to therapeutic strategies. *Biogerontology*, 22(2), 165–187.
6. Martín Giménez, V. M., de Las Heras, N., Lahera, V., Tresguerres, J. A. F., Reiter, R. J., & Manucha, W. (2022). Melatonin as an Anti-Aging Therapy for Age-Related Cardiovascular and Neurodegenerative Diseases. *Frontiers in aging neuroscience*, 14, 888292.
7. Mc Auley, M. T., Guimera, A. M., Hodgson, D., McDonald, N., Mooney, K. M., Morgan, A. E., & Proctor, C. J. (2017). Modelling the molecular mechanisms of aging. *Bioscience reports*, 37(1), BSR20160177.
8. Ramos, E., Egea, J., López-Muñoz, F., Gil-Martín, E., & Romero, A. (2023). Therapeutic Potential of Melatonin Counteracting Chemotherapy-Induced Toxicity in Breast Cancer Patients: A Systematic Review. *Pharmaceutics*, 15(6), 1616.
9. Samec, M., Liskova, A., Koklesova, L., Zhai, K., Varghese, E., Samuel, S. M., Šudomová, M., Lucansky, V., Kassayova, M., Pec, M., Biringer, K., Brockmueller, A., Kajo, K., Hassan, S. T. S., Shakibaei, M., Golubnitschaja, O., Büsselberg, D., & Kubatka, P. (2021). Metabolic Anti-Cancer Effects of Melatonin: Clinically Relevant Prospects. *Cancers*, 13(12), 3018.

10. Samra, T., Gomez-Gomez, T., Linowiecka, K., Akhundlu, A., Lopez de Mendoza, G., Gompels, M., Lee, W. W., Gherardini, J., Chéret, J., & Paus, R. (2023). Melatonin Exerts Prominent, Differential Epidermal and Dermal Anti-Aging Properties in Aged Human Eyelid Skin Ex Vivo. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 24(21), 15963.
11. Talib, W. H., Alsayed, A. R., Abuawad, A., Daoud, S., & Mahmud, A. I. (2021). Melatonin in Cancer Treatment: Current Knowledge and Future Opportunities. *Molecules (Basel, Switzerland)*, 26(9), 2506.
12. Wang, L., Wang, C., & Choi, W. S. (2022). Use of Melatonin in Cancer Treatment: Where Are We?. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 23(7), 3779.

## **Chapter - 10**

### **Electroactive Microbes: Exploring Microbial Bioelectricity**

#### **Authors**

##### **Dipti Das**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Tanisha Bhowmick**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Swastika Dutta**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Bidisha Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Subhasis Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Suranjana Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 10

## Electroactive Microbes: Exploring Microbial Bioelectricity

Dipti Das, Tanisha Bhowmick, Swastika Dutta, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar and Suranjana Sarkar

### Abstract

Microbial bioelectricity, a burgeoning field at the nexus of microbiology and renewable energy, explores the extraordinary ability of microorganisms to generate electrical currents via metabolic pathways. This abstract offers an overview of microbial bioelectricity, encompassing its mechanisms, current research directions, and potential applications. Various microorganisms, including bacteria, archaea, and fungi, exhibit electrogenic properties, enabling them to transfer electrons either extracellularly or directly to conductive surfaces. These microbial-electrochemical interactions form the foundation of diverse bioelectrochemical systems like microbial fuel cells (MFCs), microbial electrolysis cells (MECs), and microbial electrosynthesis (MES) platforms. Microbial electron transfer mechanisms involve a spectrum of redox enzymes, electron shuttles, and conductive nanomaterials that facilitate electron transport across microbial cell membranes or through biofilm matrices. Recent research efforts focus on optimizing microbial consortia, electrode materials, and operational parameters to enhance bioelectricity production and efficiency. Applications of microbial bioelectricity extend to wastewater treatment, bioremediation, biosensing, and sustainable energy generation. For example, microbial fuel cells can simultaneously treat wastewater and generate electricity from organic waste. Additionally, microbial electrosynthesis offers a means to produce valuable chemicals and fuels from renewable resources using electricity as an input.

**Keywords:** Bioelectricity, Electrogenic bacteria, Microbial Electrosynthesis, Microbial fuel cell

### Introduction

At the core of our existence lies the concept of "bioelectricity," which operates on fundamental principles of nature. It plays a crucial role in essential processes such as the formation of water from hydrogen and oxygen and the maintenance of DNA integrity. Every cell in our body possesses a membrane



potential, creating a voltage gradient that exerts significant force on proteins within. Thus, while cells may survive without genetic material, they cannot function without bioelectricity. Living organisms, including plants and animals, rely on electricity (ions and electrons) for various life-sustaining functions. These include cellular communication networks, heartbeats, energy production in mitochondria, and sensory perception by nerves. Bioelectric signaling enables us to detect pain and respond accordingly, crucial for survival. Additionally, redox potentials and electron transmission between molecules play vital roles in metabolism and maintaining internal balance. The idea of harnessing bacteria to generate electricity dates back to Potter's work in 1911, while Galvani's experiments with frog legs in the 18th century laid the groundwork for understanding "animal electricity." Subsequent advancements, such as Cohen's setup in 1935, Karube *et al.*'s catalyst studies in the 1960s, and Bennetto *et al.*'s work on synthetic mediators in the 1980s and 1990s, have contributed to the development of microbial fuel cells (MFCs). These cells utilize bioelectricity to produce electricity from organic waste, offering a sustainable solution for both energy production and waste treatment. Concerns over fossil fuel overuse and its environmental impact have spurred global interest in alternative, clean energy sources. Bioelectrochemical systems like MFCs have emerged as promising alternatives, efficiently decomposing organic materials through bacterial action to produce electricity. MFCs can utilize various substrates, including wastewater and food waste, reducing environmental contamination and energy consumption while providing a cost-effective solution for waste management (Adams 2019; George and Bates, 2022).

### **Issues Related to Electricity**

The human body possesses a remarkable ability to resist the flow of electrical current. At the surface of the skin, this resistance is exceedingly high, surpassing 99%. This resistance primarily stems from the presence of a thick layer of dead cells in the stratum corneum, which acts as a barrier. In instances where the skin is calloused or dry, the resistance can exceed 100,000 ohms. However, beneath the epidermis, where tissues are damp and somewhat salty, the internal resistance drops to around 300 ohms. Despite this resistance, in cases of high voltage, deep abrasions, cuts, or immersion in water, the skin's resistance can be efficiently bypassed. Furthermore, when voltage fluctuates rapidly, the skin behaves like a capacitor, allowing more current to pass through, posing potential harm to the human body. Climate change stands as one of the most critical global challenges, with long-term consequences that could impede every nation's journey toward sustainability. Human activities, particularly those increasing the atmospheric concentration of greenhouse

gases, have contributed to global warming, an inevitable ecological hazard. Electricity production and consumption significantly strain the environment, as modern economies heavily rely on electricity to power various sectors including industry, education, communication, healthcare, and entertainment. The International Energy Agency (IEA) predicts a substantial increase in global electricity demand, with the share of electricity in gross power consumption projected to rise from 10% to 24% by 2040 (Bielecki *et al.*, 2020).

Frequent and often underestimated consequences of natural disasters are power outages, exacerbated by aging electrical grids and climate change. Examples such as the 2003 blackout affecting 50 million Americans and Canadians, the 2008 power loss in China due to collapsed ice-coated transmission towers, and the 2012 blackout impacting 600 million people in India underscore the severity of these events. Power outages have significant repercussions, including carbon monoxide poisoning, temperature-related illnesses, and hospitalizations for cardiovascular, respiratory, and renal diseases, particularly among individuals reliant on electrically powered medical equipment. The process of electricity generation carries inherent drawbacks that must be acknowledged. While electricity is crucial for powering modern economies and sustaining various sectors, its production and consumption exert significant strain on the environment. Traditional methods of electricity generation, such as burning fossil fuels like coal, oil, and natural gas, result in the release of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. These emissions contribute to global warming and climate change, leading to long-term consequences such as rising temperatures, melting polar ice caps, and increased frequency of extreme weather events. Moreover, the extraction and transportation of fossil fuels are associated with environmental degradation, habitat destruction, and pollution of air and water resources. Additionally, the reliance on finite fossil fuel reserves poses risks to energy security and economic stability, as their depletion can lead to supply shortages and price volatility. Furthermore, nuclear power generation, although low in carbon emissions, presents its own set of challenges. Concerns about nuclear accidents, the management of radioactive waste, and the proliferation of nuclear weapons underscore the complex nature of nuclear energy (Harris, 2021).

### **Alternate Electricity Generation**

While energy remains a critical component of contemporary life, it's notable that the energy sector bears a significant responsibility for the majority of greenhouse gas emissions in the EU, accounting for more than 75%. Given

this reality, there's an increasing emphasis on prioritizing renewable energy technologies. These technologies offer a twofold benefit: they can help in reducing greenhouse gas emissions and combatting global warming, thereby positively impacting human health. Concerns about future heat-related mortality and morbidity due to climate change and global warming underline the importance of renewable energy in both environmental preservation and public health enhancement. Moreover, renewable energy holds promise for economic growth and the advancement of society (Djamgoz *et al.*, 2020).

The predominant energy sources globally—coal, oil, and gas—release heat energy when burned, resulting in the emission of significant quantities of carbon dioxide, a greenhouse gas linked to global warming. Renewable energy sources present a viable solution to this dual challenge. Furthermore, renewable energy has the potential to reach even the most marginalized populations in remote areas where conventional power infrastructure is lacking (Ramanaiah *et al.*, 2021).

Renewable energy is derived from naturally replenishing resources such as sunlight, wind, rain, waves, tides, and geothermal heat. However, the rate of consumption of fossil fuels far exceeds the rate of replenishment of renewable energy sources. While certain renewable energy sources may not be suitable for long-term use, they offer a range of benefits, including transportation, off-grid electricity provision, and heating/cooling for air and water. Wind and solar energy combined meet over 30% of the world's energy needs, with traditional biomass accounting for only 8%. Solar water heating constitutes over 45% of energy usage, while electricity represents over 6% (Shlosberg *et al.*, 2022)

## **Bioelectricity**

Every cell in the body possesses inherent bioelectric properties, which extend to the broader definition of bioelectricity encompassing any electrical phenomenon that modifies cell phenotype or is actively generated by cells. This concept of bioelectricity is integral to the field of electrophysiology, where modern techniques involve measuring or adjusting the voltage or current of individual cells using electrodes. Advancements in technology, such as electrode arrays, enable the simultaneous electrophysiological study of multiple cells, facilitating research into various areas such as neuronal growth, flatworm physiology, and the bioelectricity of cancer treatment using electricity or animal venom (Adams *et al.*, 2019).

The intricate process of cell division and differentiation within tissues and organs during development necessitates complex cell communication.

Increasing evidence suggests that bioelectrical signals regulated by ion channels play a crucial role in facilitating this coordination. Ion channels, which regulate the transmembrane potential of cells by controlling the concentrations of charged molecules such as calcium, sodium, potassium, and chloride, are found in cell membranes and organelle membranes. The transmembrane potential, or  $V_{mem}$ , is generated by the difference in ion concentrations between the extracellular space and the intracellular environment, with all cells exhibiting a resting membrane potential (George *et al.*, 2022).

Bacteria exhibit electrical activity, utilizing the potential across their plasma membrane to sustain vital functions. Recent research has highlighted the dynamic nature of bacterial membrane potential, linking it to various physiological processes and behaviors such as cell division and cell-to-cell communication. Unlike other microorganisms, electric bacteria possess the capability for extracellular electron transfer (EET), enabling them to interact with insoluble electron donors and acceptors and open new metabolic pathways. This unique ability distinguishes them as electroactive bacteria (Jones *et al.*, 2021; Nealson *et al.*, 2017).

Electroactive bacteria, found in diverse habitats including water, soil, and sediment, have garnered interest due to their potential to produce electrical current in microbial fuel cells (MFCs). These microorganisms play a crucial role in MFCs by oxidizing organic materials and transferring electrons to an anode, ultimately generating renewable bioelectricity from various sources of organic matter present in wastewater. The adaptability of electroactive bacteria in utilizing diverse carbon sources underscores the environmental sustainability and potential of MFCs as a renewable energy source (Silic and Zhang, 2023).

### **Electrogenic Bacteria**

Electrogenic bacteria, a diverse group of microorganisms capable of producing electrical currents as part of their metabolic processes, have garnered considerable attention due to their potential applications across multiple fields, including environmental remediation, renewable energy production, and biotechnology.

A defining characteristic of electrogenic bacteria is their capability to transfer electrons to external surfaces, such as electrodes, via a process known as extracellular electron transfer (EET). This electron transfer mechanism can occur either directly or indirectly, depending on the specific bacterial species and environmental conditions.

Several well-known examples of electrogenic bacteria include (Choi, 2022; Garbini *et al.*, Ihara *et al.*, 2022; 2023; Schneider *et al.*, 2023; ).:

1. ***Shewanella spp.***: These bacteria are notable for their capacity to transfer electrons to various solid substrates, including metals and electrodes. *Shewanella oneidensis*, in particular, has been extensively studied and applied in microbial fuel cells and bioremediation efforts.
2. ***Geobacter spp.***: Found commonly in anaerobic environments, *Geobacter* species play crucial roles in the cycling of metals and carbon compounds. They exhibit extracellular electron transfer capabilities and have been investigated for their potential in electricity generation and environmental remediation.
3. ***Rhodoferax ferrireducens***: This bacterium is recognized for its ability to reduce iron and manganese oxides, a process involving the transfer of electrons to external surfaces. Research on *Rhodoferax ferrireducens* has focused on its potential contributions to biogeochemical cycling and bioremediation strategies.

<i>Species</i>	<i>Habitat</i>
<i>Acinetobacter johnsonii</i>	Marine water
<i>Enterococcus faecalis</i>	Human Gut
<i>Pleomorphomonas sp.</i>	Plant roots (endophyte)
<i>Methanococcus maripaludis</i>	Salt marsh sediment
<i>Shewanella oneidensis</i>	Deep sea anaerobic habitats/soil
<i>Geobacter sulfurreducens</i>	Soil/sediment
<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Ubiquitous/wastewater
<i>Arcobacter butzleri</i>	Freshwater/seawater
<i>Desulfuromonas sp</i>	Salt marsh sediment
<i>Shinella sp.</i>	Sugar cane steam (endophyte)

### Bioelectricity Production

The mechanism of electricity production in bacteria, especially electrogenic bacteria, is a complex process driven by intricate biochemical and biophysical mechanisms facilitating extracellular electron transfer (EET). This phenomenon occurs under various conditions and is influenced by factors such as bacterial species, environmental parameters, and the availability of electron acceptors. Here is a detailed elucidation of this mechanism (Hoang *et al.*, 2023; Pan and Bhattacharyya, 2023):

**Electron Generation:** Bacteria synthesize electrons as part of their metabolic pathways, primarily through the oxidation of organic substrates or

inorganic compounds. In anaerobic environments like sediments or wastewater, bacteria can oxidize organic matter through processes such as anaerobic respiration or fermentation, yielding electrons as metabolic byproducts. Moreover, certain bacteria possess specialized enzymes like hydrogenases or dehydrogenases, directly generating electrons during metabolic reactions.

**Electron Transport:** Once produced, electrons are transported across the bacterial cell membrane through various inner membrane proteins such as cytochromes, quinones, and other redox-active molecules. These proteins constitute electron transport chains that facilitate the transfer of electrons from intracellular donors to extracellular acceptors.

**Extracellular Electron Transfer (EET):** A crucial step in bacterial electricity production is the transfer of electrons from the bacterial cell to external surfaces or electron acceptors. This transfer can occur directly through contact between the bacterial cell membrane and external surfaces or indirectly via soluble electron shuttles like flavins or humic substances, which mediate electron transfer over longer distances. Additionally, some bacteria produce conductive structures such as pili or nanowires, facilitating direct electron transfer to external surfaces.

**Interaction with Electron Acceptors:** Upon reaching external surfaces or electron acceptors, electrons participate in redox reactions, where they reduce oxidized compounds or generate electrical current. In anaerobic conditions, common electron acceptors include metal oxides like iron or manganese minerals, which bacteria can reduce by donating electrons. In aerobic environments, oxygen serves as the primary electron acceptor, leading to the production of water as a byproduct.

**Electrical Current Generation:** The transfer of electrons from bacteria to external electron acceptors results in the generation of electrical current. This current can be measured and harnessed for various applications. For instance, in microbial fuel cells (MFCs), bacteria are grown on electrodes, and the electrons they donate are collected as electrical power. This electricity can then be utilized to power electronic devices or stored for future use.

### **Microbial fuel cells**

A microbial fuel cell (MFC) is a groundbreaking bioelectrochemical device designed to capitalize on the metabolic activities of microorganisms for the conversion of organic matter into electrical energy, fig 1. This innovative technology operates on the fundamental principle of extracellular electron transfer (EET), a process through which bacteria transfer electrons

from organic substrates to an external electron acceptor, typically an electrode. As a result, an electrical current is generated, marking a sustainable means of energy production. The core structure of an MFC typically comprises an anode, cathode, and an electrolyte solution. The anode harbors electrogenic bacteria, such as *Geobacter* or *Shewanella* species, which initiate the oxidation of organic compounds, releasing electrons as a byproduct. These electrons are then directed towards the anode's surface, where they traverse through an external circuit towards the cathode.

At the cathode, electrons join forces with an electron acceptor—often oxygen from the surrounding air—to engender water or other reduced compounds. This electrochemical reaction culminates the circuit, resulting in the production of an electrical current that can be harnessed for diverse applications.

MFCs present several advantages over conventional energy conversion technologies. They possess the versatility to utilize a broad spectrum of organic substrates, including wastewater, agricultural residues, and biomass, rendering them as sustainable and adaptable energy sources. Furthermore, MFCs operate under ambient conditions of temperature and pressure, thereby diminishing the need for extensive infrastructure and maintenance expenses.

Moreover, MFCs exhibit promising potential in various domains such as wastewater treatment, environmental remediation, and off-grid power generation. In wastewater treatment, MFCs offer a dual-purpose solution by concurrently treating organic pollutants and generating electricity, thereby presenting a cost-effective and environmentally benign approach to wastewater management. Additionally, these devices can be deployed in remote or underserved regions to extract electricity from organic waste, thereby extending access to clean energy in off-grid communities.

Despite their potential, MFCs face challenges in optimizing performance, including the enhancement of electron transfer efficiency, augmentation of power output, and scaling up for commercial utilization. Active research endeavors are underway to refine MFC design, explore innovative electrode materials, and identify novel electrogenic bacteria to propel this promising technology forward (Khater *et al.*, 2022; Yao and Tang, 2023).

### **Working Principle of Microbial Fuel Cells (MFCs)**

**Microbial Metabolism:** In the anode chamber of an MFC, microorganisms consume organic substrates such as glucose, acetate, or wastewater. Through their metabolic processes, these microorganisms extract energy and release electrons and protons as byproducts.

**Electron Transfer:** The electrons generated during microbial metabolism are transferred to the anode. Since these electrons cannot traverse the proton exchange membrane (PEM), they flow through an external circuit to reach the cathode, generating an electric current in the process.

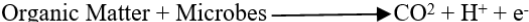
**Proton Migration:** At the same time, the protons produced in the anode chamber migrate through the PEM to the cathode chamber.

**Reduction Reaction at the Cathode:** In the cathode chamber, the electrons combine with protons and oxygen to form water. This reaction completes the electrical circuit and sustains the flow of electrons (Shlosberg *et al.*, 2022).

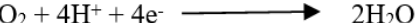
**Biochemical Reactions in MFCs**

The overall biochemical reactions occurring in an MFC can be summarized as follows:

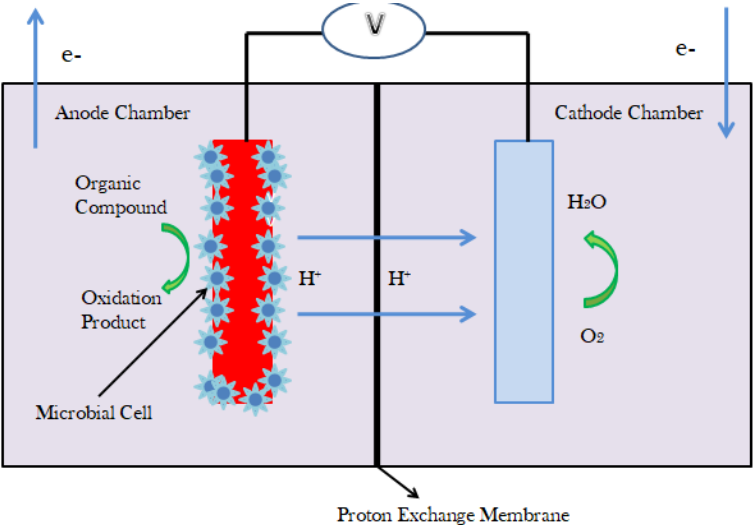
**At the Anode**



**At the Cathode**



These reactions demonstrate the oxidation of organic matter by microbes at the anode, resulting in the release of electrons and protons. The electrons then travel to the cathode, where they participate in a reduction reaction with protons and oxygen to produce water.



**Fig 1:** Microbial Fuel Cell



## Application of Bioelectricity

Bioelectricity has a broad spectrum of applications across numerous fields, showcasing its versatility and significance in modern science and technology. Here are some notable applications of bioelectricity (Nealson, 2017; Nuccitelli, 2019):

- 1. Medical Devices:** Bioelectricity powers a wide range of medical devices used for diagnosis, monitoring, and treatment. These include electrocardiograms (ECGs), electroencephalograms (EEGs), pacemakers, and deep brain stimulators.
- 2. Neural Prosthetics:** Bioelectric signals are essential for controlling neural prosthetic devices, enabling individuals with disabilities to regain lost sensory or motor function. Brain-computer interfaces (BCIs) and neuroprosthetic limbs translate neural activity into control commands, offering new avenues for mobility and independence.
- 3. Bioelectronic Medicine:** Electrical stimulation techniques are employed in bioelectronic medicine to modulate neural circuits for therapeutic purposes. Techniques such as vagus nerve stimulation and deep brain stimulation have shown promise in treating conditions such as epilepsy, depression, and Parkinson's disease.
- 4. Neuroimaging:** Bioelectric signals play a crucial role in neuroimaging techniques used to study brain activity and cognition. Electroencephalography (EEG), magnetoencephalography (MEG), functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), and positron emission tomography (PET) are among the widely used methods for brain imaging and research.
- 5. Regenerative Medicine:** Electrical stimulation is utilized in regenerative medicine to promote tissue repair and regeneration. Techniques such as electrical stimulation and pulsed electromagnetic fields (PEMF) have been employed to enhance wound healing, bone regeneration, and tissue engineering.
- 6. Bioenergy Production:** Bioelectricity is harnessed in bioenergy production technologies like microbial fuel cells (MFCs) and microbial electrolysis cells (MECs). These systems use electrogenic bacteria to convert organic waste into electricity or hydrogen fuel, offering sustainable solutions for wastewater treatment and renewable energy generation.
- 7. Environmental Remediation:** Bioelectricity-based technologies are

used in environmental remediation efforts to clean up contaminated soil and water. Techniques such as electrokinetic remediation and bioelectrochemical systems (BESs) leverage microbial metabolism and electrochemical reactions to degrade pollutants and treat wastewater.

- 8. Biosensors and Diagnostics:** Bioelectric signals are employed in biosensor technologies for detecting and quantifying biological analytes. Electrochemical biosensors, such as glucose meters and DNA sensors, provide rapid and sensitive measurements for medical diagnostics, environmental monitoring, and food safety applications.

## **Current Advancements**

Water scarcity, energy crises, and the disposal of industrial effluents are pressing global issues. To address these concerns, researchers are exploring waste-to-energy recovery systems as viable alternatives. Among these, microbial fuel cell (MFC) technology stands out, utilizing bioelectrochemistry in wastewater treatment processes. MFCs leverage electrochemical redox processes to convert organic materials present in wastewater into bioelectricity. Using bacteria as biocatalysts, MFC systems efficiently treat wastewater, offering a sustainable solution to both environmental and energy challenges. Over the years, significant advancements have been made in MFC technology, focusing on understanding the physiochemical and biochemical properties of extracellular electron acceptors and mediators (EAMs), diversifying microbial populations and substrates for reactor operation, and optimizing anode and cathode materials. Recent research has also explored the electron transport mechanism in cable bacteria—a type of filamentous, multicellular electroactive bacteria. These bacteria exhibit unique respiratory pathways, allowing them to respire through minerals or other organisms via self-made nanowires or electron shuttles. Cable bacteria have demonstrated the ability to respire via electrodes in bioelectrochemical systems (BESs). By adjusting parameters such as electrode potential and substrate availability, the production of nanowires can be optimized (Ahmadpanah *et al.*, 2023; Xiang *et al.*, 2023).

## **Future Prospect**

In the realm of microbial fuel cell (MFC) technology, there are promising prospects for future advancements and applications. Researchers are continually striving to improve the efficiency of MFCs in terms of electricity generation and wastewater treatment. This involves optimizing electrode materials, microbial catalysts, and reactor configurations to maximize electron transfer rates and bioelectricity production. While MFCs have shown success

at lab scale, there is a growing interest in scaling up these systems for practical applications, such as industrial wastewater treatment, decentralized energy production, and off-grid applications. Additionally, MFCs can complement existing renewable energy systems, such as solar and wind power, by providing a reliable source of continuous electricity generation. Integration with other renewable energy technologies could enhance overall energy sustainability and grid stability. Moreover, future research may explore MFCs' role in bioremediation and resource recovery from wastewater, such as recovering valuable metals or producing biofuels from organic waste. Combining MFCs with other technologies, such as anaerobic digestion or membrane bioreactors, could create hybrid systems with enhanced performance and versatility. Advancements in sensor technology and data analytics may enable the development of smart MFCs capable of real-time monitoring, self-regulation, and adaptive operation. Beyond wastewater treatment, MFCs have potential applications in biomedical devices, such as implantable bioelectricity generators or biosensors for monitoring physiological parameters. Overall, continued research and innovation will play a crucial role in realizing the full potential of microbial fuel cells in addressing global challenges in water and energy sustainability, as well as unlocking new opportunities for renewable energy generation and environmental protection.

## **Conclusion**

In summary, microbial fuel cell (MFC) technology emerges as a promising solution for tackling critical issues concerning water treatment, energy production, and environmental sustainability. Through ongoing research and innovative endeavors, MFCs have showcased their capability to efficiently convert organic waste into bioelectricity while concurrently purifying wastewater. As we gaze into the future, advancements in MFC design, scaling, and integration with renewable energy systems offer avenues for widespread adoption and impact. By capitalizing on the adaptability of MFCs in hybrid systems and exploring their potential in bioremediation and biomedical applications, we can further unleash their benefits for society. Nonetheless, realizing the complete potential of MFCs necessitates sustained collaboration among researchers, policymakers, and industry stakeholders to surmount technical hurdles and implement scalable solutions. Ultimately, by harnessing the potential of microbial fuel cells, we can contribute to fostering a more sustainable and resilient future for our planet and communities.

## **References**

1. Adams D. S. (2019). What Is Bioelectricity?. *Bioelectricity*, 1(1), 3–4.

2. Ahmadpanah, H., Motamedian, E., & Mardanpour, M. M. (2023). Metabolic regulation boosts bioelectricity generation in *Zymomonas mobilis* microbial fuel cell, surpassing ethanol production. *Scientific reports*, *13*(1), 20673.
3. Bielecki, A., Ernst, S., Skrodzka, W., & Wojnicki, I. (2020). The externalities of energy production in the context of development of clean energy generation. *Environmental science and pollution research international*, *27*(11), 11506–11530.
4. Choi S. (2022). Electrogenic Bacteria Promise New Opportunities for Powering, Sensing, and Synthesizing. *Small (Weinheim an der Bergstrasse, Germany)*, *18*(18), e2107902.
5. Djamgoz, M. B. A., & Levin, M. (2020). Bioelectricity: A Quick Reminder of a Fast-Advancing Discipline!. *Bioelectricity*, *2*(3), 208–209.
6. Garbini, G. L., Barra Caracciolo, A., & Grenni, P. (2023). Electroactive Bacteria in Natural Ecosystems and Their Applications in Microbial Fuel Cells for Bioremediation: A Review. *Microorganisms*, *11*(5), 1255.
7. George, L. F., & Bates, E. A. (2022). Mechanisms Underlying Influence of Bioelectricity in Development. *Frontiers in cell and developmental biology*, *10*, 772230.
8. George, L. F., & Bates, E. A. (2022). Mechanisms Underlying Influence of Bioelectricity in Development. *Frontiers in cell and developmental biology*, *10*, 772230.
9. Harris M. P. (2021). Bioelectric signaling as a unique regulator of development and regeneration. *Development (Cambridge, England)*, *148*(10), dev180794.
10. Hoang, A. T., Nižetić, S., Ng, K. H., Papadopoulos, A. M., Le, A. T., Kumar, S., Hadiyanto, H., & Pham, V. V. (2022). Microbial fuel cells for bioelectricity production from waste as sustainable prospect of future energy sector. *Chemosphere*, *287*(Pt 3), 132285.
11. Ihara, S., Wakai, S., Maehara, T., & Okamoto, A. (2022). Electrochemical Enrichment and Isolation of Electrogenic Bacteria from 0.22  $\mu\text{m}$  Filtrate. *Microorganisms*, *10*(10), 2051.
12. Khater, D. Z., Amin, R. S., Zhran, M. O., Abd El-Aziz, Z. K., Mahmoud, M., Hassan, H. M., & El-Khatib, K. M. (2022). The enhancement of microbial fuel cell performance by anodic bacterial community adaptation and cathodic mixed nickel-copper oxides on a graphene

- electrocatalyst. *Journal, genetic engineering & biotechnology*, 20(1), 12.
13. Nealsen K. H. (2017). Bioelectricity (electromicrobiology) and sustainability. *Microbial biotechnology*, 10(5), 1114–1119.
  14. Nuccitelli R. (2019). Practical Applications of Bioelectric Stimulation. *Bioelectricity*, 1(4), 203.
  15. Pan, P., & Bhattacharyya, N. (2023). Bioelectricity Production from Microbial Fuel Cell (MFC) Using *Lysinibacillus xylanilyticus* Strain nbpp1 as a Biocatalyst. *Current microbiology*, 80(8), 252.
  16. Ramanaiah, S. V., Cordas, C. M., Matias, S. C., Reddy, M. V., Leitão, J. H., & Fonseca, L. P. (2021). Bioelectricity generation using long-term operated biocathode: RFLP based microbial diversity analysis. *Biotechnology reports (Amsterdam, Netherlands)*, 32, e00693.
  17. Schneider, G., Pásztor, D., Szabó, P., Kőrösi, L., Kishan, N. S., Raju, P. A. R. K., & Calay, R. K. (2023). Isolation and Characterisation of Electrogenic Bacteria from Mud Samples. *Microorganisms*, 11(3), 781.
  18. Shlosberg, Y., Krupnik, N., Tóth, T. N., Eichenbaum, B., Meirovich, M. M., Meiri, D., Yehezkeli, O., Schuster, G., Israel, Á., & Adir, N. (2022). Bioelectricity generation from live marine photosynthetic macroalgae. *Biosensors & bioelectronics*, 198, 113824.
  19. Silic, M. R., & Zhang, G. (2023). Bioelectricity in Developmental Patterning and Size Control: Evidence and Genetically Encoded Tools in the Zebrafish Model. *Cells*, 12(8), 1148.
  20. Xiang, Y., Liu, T., Jia, B., Zhang, L., & Su, X. (2023). Boosting bioelectricity generation in microbial fuel cells via biomimetic Fe-N-S-C nanozymes. *Biosensors & bioelectronics*, 220, 114895.
  21. Yao, H., Xiao, J., & Tang, X. (2023). Microbial Fuel Cell-Based Organic Matter Sensors: Principles, Structures and Applications. *Bioengineering (Basel, Switzerland)*, 10(8), 886.

## **Chapter - 11**

### **Innovations and Advancements in Synthetic Skin Technology**

#### **Authors**

##### **Anwasha Das**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Prity Singh**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Tiyasha Saha**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Bidisha Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

##### **Subhasis Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Suranjana Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 11

## Innovations and Advancements in Synthetic Skin Technology

Anwesha Das, Prity Singh, Tiyasha Saha, Semanti Ghosh, Bidisha Ghosh, Subhasis Sarkar  
and Suranjana Sarkar

### Abstract

Synthetic skin has emerged as a revolutionary technology with significant implications for medical, cosmetic, and research applications. This abstract provides an overview of the latest advancements in synthetic skin development, highlighting its diverse uses and promising potential. Synthetic skin refers to engineered materials designed to mimic the structure and function of natural human skin. These materials often consist of biocompatible polymers, biomimetic scaffolds, and integrated sensory elements to replicate the properties of native tissue. Key advancements in synthetic skin technology include the incorporation of vascular networks to facilitate nutrient exchange and waste removal, as well as the integration of sensors for real-time monitoring of physiological parameters. Medical applications of synthetic skin range from wound healing and tissue engineering to the development of prosthetic limbs and organs. In dermatology, synthetic skin models serve as valuable tools for drug testing, disease modeling, and cosmetic product evaluation, offering a reliable alternative to traditional animal testing methods. Moreover, synthetic skin holds promise for research in fields such as regenerative medicine, robotics, and wearable technology. As researchers continue to refine the design and fabrication of synthetic skin, there is growing excitement surrounding its potential to revolutionize healthcare, enhance quality of life, and drive innovation across various industries.

**Keywords:** Biomimetic materials, Biopolymer Medical applications, Synthetic skin, Tissue engineering

### Introduction

Synthetic skin, scientifically, denotes bioengineered materials meticulously designed to emulate the intricate structure and multifunctional capabilities of natural human skin. These materials typically comprise



biocompatible polymers like polyethylene glycol (PEG), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), or polylactic acid (PLA), chosen for their mechanical strength and flexibility. Biomimetic scaffolds, such as collagen or fibrin, are also integrated to mimic the extracellular matrix (ECM) of native skin, providing structural support and facilitating cell attachment and proliferation. A critical feature of synthetic skin involves integrating sensory elements, such as microfluidic channels or embedded sensors, to emulate the sensory functions of natural skin. Microfluidic channels simulate the vasculature of skin, enabling nutrient exchange and waste removal, while embedded sensors facilitate real-time monitoring of physiological parameters like temperature, pH, and pressure. Fabrication of synthetic skin utilizes various techniques like electrospinning, 3D bioprinting, and microfluidic patterning, offering precise control over composition, structure, and properties. These methods allow researchers to tailor synthetic skin characteristics to specific applications. In medicine, synthetic skin has vast potential for wound healing, tissue engineering, and advanced prosthetics. Synthetic skin grafts can cover wounds, promote tissue regeneration, and facilitate integration of bioengineered tissues or organs. Synthetic skin models serve as valuable tools for drug testing, disease modeling, and cosmetic product evaluation in dermatology and pharmaceutical research (Brohem *et al.*, 2011).

## **Skin Injuries**

Skin injuries encompass a wide range of conditions resulting from various factors such as mechanical trauma, chemical exposure, thermal damage, or underlying medical conditions. The skin, being the body's largest organ, consists of multiple layers, each serving distinct functions in maintaining homeostasis, protecting against pathogens, and providing sensory input. Minor skin injuries, such as abrasions and superficial cuts, primarily affect the epidermis, the outermost layer mainly composed of keratinocytes. These injuries typically involve disruption of the epidermal barrier but do not penetrate beyond this layer. The epidermis plays a critical role in protecting against dehydration, microbial invasion, and environmental toxins, necessitating prompt wound care to prevent infection and facilitate healing. Deeper skin injuries, including lacerations and puncture wounds, extend into the dermis, the layer beneath the epidermis rich in blood vessels, nerves, and connective tissue. Damage to the dermis can result in bleeding, pain, and inflammation, requiring comprehensive wound management to promote tissue repair and prevent complications such as scarring and contractures. Fibroblasts in the dermis play a pivotal role in collagen synthesis, essential for wound closure and tissue remodeling during the healing process. Burn

injuries, categorized by depth and severity, can cause extensive damage to the skin and underlying tissues. Superficial burns, known as first-degree burns, affect only the epidermis and typically result in redness and pain. Partial-thickness burns, or second-degree burns, extend into the dermis, causing blistering, swelling, and increased risk of infection. Full-thickness burns, classified as third-degree burns, penetrate through the entire thickness of the skin, often requiring surgical intervention, skin grafting, and intensive wound care to promote healing and prevent complications such as infection and contractures. Chronic skin injuries, such as pressure ulcers and diabetic foot ulcers, result from prolonged tissue ischemia, impaired wound healing, and underlying medical conditions. These wounds often occur in areas subject to prolonged pressure, friction, or shearing forces, leading to tissue necrosis and ulcer formation. Management of chronic wounds involves addressing underlying risk factors, optimizing tissue perfusion, and promoting granulation tissue formation to facilitate wound closure and prevent recurrence (Cañedo-Dorantes, and Cañedo-Ayala, 2019).

## **Current Treatments**

Current treatments for skin injuries encompass a spectrum of approaches tailored to the type and severity of the injury, incorporating advancements in wound care technology and scientific understanding of wound healing processes (Vecin and Kirsner *et al.*, 2023):

**Wound Debridement:** The process of removing non-viable tissue from the wound bed is crucial for promoting healing. This can be achieved through various methods including sharp debridement, enzymatic debridement using proteolytic enzymes, autolytic debridement using moisture-retentive dressings, or mechanical debridement with wet-to-dry dressings.

**Topical Antimicrobial Agents:** Antiseptic solutions like chlorhexidine and povidone-iodine are commonly used to reduce microbial load in the wound bed. Silver-based dressings and topical antibiotics such as mupirocin or silver sulfadiazine are also employed for their broad-spectrum antimicrobial properties.

**Advanced Dressings:** The development of advanced wound dressings has revolutionized wound care. These dressings may contain materials like hydrogels, hydrocolloids, foams, or alginates, which provide a moist wound environment conducive to healing while managing exudate and protecting the wound from external contaminants.

**Biological Dressings:** Biological dressings derived from human or animal sources, such as amniotic membrane or porcine-derived extracellular

matrix, contain growth factors and cytokines that promote tissue regeneration and reduce inflammation, accelerating wound closure.

**Negative Pressure Wound Therapy (NPWT):** NPWT involves the application of controlled negative pressure to the wound bed using a sealed dressing connected to a vacuum pump. This technique enhances wound healing by promoting angiogenesis, reducing edema, and stimulating the formation of granulation tissue.

**Cell-Based Therapies:** Stem cell therapy and platelet-rich plasma (PRP) therapy are emerging as promising approaches for enhancing wound healing. Stem cells possess the ability to differentiate into various cell types involved in tissue regeneration, while PRP contains growth factors that promote angiogenesis and tissue repair.

**Bioengineered Skin Substitutes:** Tissue-engineered skin substitutes composed of synthetic or biological materials provide a scaffold for cell attachment and proliferation. These substitutes may be acellular or cellular, with cellular constructs containing fibroblasts, keratinocytes, or stem cells to facilitate tissue regeneration.

**Phototherapy:** Light-based therapies such as low-level laser therapy (LLLT) and photodynamic therapy (PDT) have shown promise in promoting wound healing through various mechanisms including increased collagen synthesis, modulation of inflammation, and antimicrobial effects.

**Gene Therapy:** Gene therapy approaches aim to modulate gene expression in the wound microenvironment to enhance healing processes. This may involve the delivery of growth factors or cytokines via viral vectors or non-viral delivery systems to promote angiogenesis, cell proliferation, and extracellular matrix deposition.

### **Associated Complications**

The treatment of skin injuries can be considerably complicated by various factors that hinder the healing process or lead to unfavorable outcomes. These complications encompass a wide range of issues, including microbial infections, delayed wound healing, excessive scar formation, chronic wounds, wound dehiscence, fistula formation, allergic reactions, tissue necrosis, and systemic complications. Infections, if not promptly managed, can significantly prolong wound healing and increase the risk of systemic complications such as sepsis. Delayed wound healing may occur due to factors such as poor blood supply, underlying medical conditions, malnutrition, or immunosuppression, which can impair cellular proliferation, angiogenesis, and extracellular matrix

synthesis. Excessive scar formation, including hypertrophic scars or keloids, can result in functional impairment and aesthetic concerns, driven by dysregulated signaling pathways involving transforming growth factor-beta (TGF- $\beta$ ) and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). Chronic wounds, persisting for extended periods, often present challenges related to inflammation, infection, and tissue regeneration, requiring comprehensive management strategies. Wound dehiscence, fistula formation, and compromised aesthetics further complicate the healing process, necessitating additional interventions to promote wound closure and tissue regeneration. Allergic reactions to wound care products or surgical materials can exacerbate wound complications, leading to localized inflammation and delayed healing. Tissue necrosis, if left untreated, can impede wound healing by serving as a source of infection and hindering cellular migration and proliferation. Finally, systemic complications arising from severe wound issues pose significant risks to patient health, requiring multidisciplinary approaches to optimize outcomes and minimize risks.

### **Synthetic Skin**

An innovative strategy in addressing skin injuries and their complexities involves the utilization of synthetic skin, an advancement rooted in tissue engineering and biomaterials science. Synthetic skin comprises engineered materials meticulously crafted to replicate the intricate structure and functions of natural human skin. These materials commonly encompass biocompatible polymers, such as polyurethane, silicone, or hydrogels, engineered to emulate the properties of the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous layers of native skin. Recent progressions in synthetic skin development have seen significant improvements in biomimetic properties. Advanced fabrication methods, including 3D bioprinting and electrospinning, enable the creation of intricate scaffolds closely resembling the microarchitecture of native skin tissue. Moreover, the incorporation of bioactive molecules, growth factors, and cell signaling cues into synthetic skin matrices can facilitate cellular adhesion, proliferation, and differentiation, thereby expediting wound healing processes. Synthetic skin technologies also incorporate innovative strategies to address specific challenges associated with skin injuries. For instance, the integration of antimicrobial peptides or nanoparticles into synthetic skin formulations helps prevent infections and foster a sterile wound environment. Similarly, controlled drug delivery systems embedded within synthetic skin matrices enable the targeted release of therapeutics, such as growth factors or anti-inflammatory agents, to accelerate tissue regeneration and alleviate inflammation (Tottoli *et al.*, 2020).

Furthermore, synthetic skin models serve as indispensable tools for dermatological research, offering physiologically relevant platforms for studying wound healing mechanisms, drug efficacy, and toxicity testing. These models can be engineered to replicate key aspects of skin physiology, including epidermal barrier function, immune responses, and interactions with microorganisms. By elucidating the intricate interplay between cells, extracellular matrix components, and external stimuli, synthetic skin models provide valuable insights into the pathogenesis of skin injuries and the development of novel therapeutic interventions.

## **Mechanism of Formulation**

The development of synthetic skin entails a meticulous process that integrates diverse scientific principles and technologies to replicate the intricate structure and functions of natural human skin comprehensively (Wendt *et al.*, 2011; Przekora *et al.*, 2020). The steps involved have been explained below in fig 1.

**Biomaterial Selection:** The initial step involves selecting suitable biomaterials to serve as the foundation for synthetic skin. Biocompatible polymers are commonly chosen for their ability to mimic the mechanical properties of native skin while being compatible with the human body. Examples include silicone, polyurethane, hydrogels, or combinations thereof.

**Scaffold Fabrication:** Advanced fabrication techniques, such as 3D bioprinting, electrospinning, or microfluidics, are employed to create scaffolds that closely resemble the microarchitecture of native skin tissue. These techniques enable precise control over the structure and porosity of the scaffold, providing a framework for cell attachment, proliferation, and differentiation akin to the extracellular matrix of natural skin.

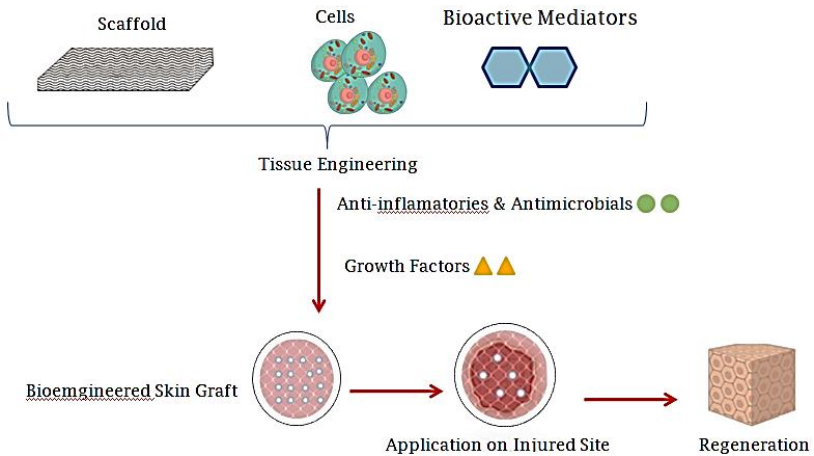
**Cell Seeding:** Following scaffold fabrication, the scaffold is seeded with appropriate cells to emulate the cellular composition of native skin. This may involve keratinocytes, fibroblasts, endothelial cells, or other relevant cell types. The cells adhere to the scaffold and proliferate, forming a three-dimensional tissue structure reminiscent of natural skin.

**Incorporation of Bioactive Molecules:** Bioactive molecules, including growth factors, cytokines, or extracellular matrix proteins, are often incorporated into the synthetic skin matrices to enhance their functionality. These molecules play essential roles in regulating cellular behavior, promoting wound healing processes, and stimulating tissue regeneration.

**Integration of Sensory Elements:** Some synthetic skin designs may

integrate sensory elements, such as sensors or actuators, to mimic the sensory functions of natural skin. These components enable real-time monitoring of physiological parameters like temperature, pressure, or pH, making synthetic skin not only structurally but also functionally similar to native skin.

**Maturation and Characterization:** Subsequent to cell seeding and incorporation of bioactive molecules, the synthetic skin constructs undergo maturation *in vitro*. During this period, the cells continue to proliferate and differentiate, and the tissue structure matures to closely resemble native skin. Characterization techniques, including histological analysis, immunostaining, and biomechanical testing, are employed to assess the structural and functional properties of the resulting synthetic skin constructs.



**Fig 1:** Mechanism of Skin Tissue Engineering

## Current Advancements

As of now, synthetic skin technology is experiencing rapid advancements, presenting innovative solutions for various medical, cosmetic, and research applications. Scientists and researchers are continuously exploring novel materials, fabrication methods, and functionalities to enhance the performance and versatility of synthetic skin. In the medical realm, synthetic skin finds increasing utility in wound healing, tissue engineering, and regenerative medicine. Through advanced biomaterials and bioengineering techniques, synthetic skin products closely emulate the characteristics of natural human skin, promoting more efficient wound closure and tissue regeneration. Cosmetic uses of synthetic skin have also gained traction, with the emergence of synthetic skin models for assessing skincare products and cosmetic formulations. These models offer an ethical and reliable alternative to animal testing, enabling more accurate evaluations of product safety and

effectiveness. Moreover, synthetic skin technology contributes significantly to research efforts across various disciplines, including dermatology, biomechanics, and robotics. By providing realistic and customizable platforms for studying skin physiology, disease mechanisms, and biomechanical properties, synthetic skin models drive advancements in understanding and treating diverse skin conditions and injuries.

### **Future Prospect**

Looking ahead, the future prospects of synthetic skin technology appear promising, with anticipated advancements across various domains. In the medical realm, synthetic skin holds significant potential for further refinement and customization to address specific patient needs. Advancements in biomaterials and fabrication techniques may lead to the development of synthetic skin products closely resembling native human skin, offering more effective solutions for wound healing, tissue regeneration, and organ transplantation. Moreover, synthetic skin technology is poised to contribute to personalized medicine by tailoring synthetic skin constructs to individual patients based on their unique physiological characteristics and medical conditions. This personalized approach could revolutionize treatments for burns, chronic wounds, and skin diseases, ultimately improving patient outcomes and quality of life. In the cosmetic industry, synthetic skin has the potential to advance testing models that accurately simulate human skin responses to skincare products and cosmetics. These models may enable more precise evaluations of product efficacy and safety, driving innovation in cosmetic research and development. Furthermore, synthetic skin technology is expected to drive progress in scientific research, particularly in dermatology, tissue engineering, and biomechanics. By providing realistic and versatile platforms for studying skin physiology, disease mechanisms, and biomechanical properties, synthetic skin models will contribute to deeper insights into skin health and disease, leading to novel diagnostic and therapeutic approaches.

Overall, the future of synthetic skin technology is characterized by endless possibilities for innovation and application across healthcare, cosmetics, and scientific research. With ongoing advancements and interdisciplinary collaboration, synthetic skin has the potential to revolutionize approaches to skin-related issues and foster transformative developments in the years ahead.

### **Conclusion**

In summary, synthetic skin technology stands as a groundbreaking

innovation with far-reaching implications across diverse sectors such as medicine, cosmetics, and scientific inquiry. Its capacity to closely emulate the structure and function of natural human skin holds immense promise for advancing wound healing, tissue regeneration, and organ transplantation within the medical realm. Moreover, synthetic skin's potential for personalized medicine opens avenues for tailored treatments, catering to the unique needs and conditions of individual patients. Within the cosmetic industry, synthetic skin offers invaluable testing platforms, presenting an ethical and dependable alternative to conventional animal testing methodologies for evaluating skincare products and cosmetics. Additionally, synthetic skin technology propels scientific research forward by furnishing realistic frameworks for exploring skin physiology, disease mechanisms, and biomechanical attributes. Consequently, this contributes to the development of innovative diagnostic and therapeutic strategies. As ongoing research and development endeavors propel synthetic skin technology forward, the horizon appears ripe with opportunities for further advancements and applications across various domains. Through collaborative efforts and the integration of cutting-edge technologies, synthetic skin has the potential to redefine approaches to skin-related challenges and spearhead transformative progress in healthcare, cosmetics, and scientific exploration.

## References

1. Brohem, C. A., Cardeal, L. B., Tiago, M., Soengas, M. S., Barros, S. B., & Maria-Engler, S. S. (2011). Artificial skin in perspective: concepts and applications. *Pigment cell & melanoma research*, 24(1), 35–50.
2. Vecin, N. M., & Kirsner, R. S. (2023). Skin substitutes as treatment for chronic wounds: current and future directions. *Frontiers in medicine*, 10, 1154567.
3. Przekora A. (2020). A Concise Review on Tissue Engineered Artificial Skin Grafts for Chronic Wound Treatment: Can We Reconstruct Functional Skin Tissue In Vitro?. *Cells*, 9(7), 1622.
4. Wendt, H., Hillmer, A., Reimers, K., Kuhbier, J. W., Schäfer-Nolte, F., Allmeling, C., Kasper, C., & Vogt, P. M. (2011). Artificial skin--culturing of different skin cell lines for generating an artificial skin substitute on cross-weaved spider silk fibres. *PLoS one*, 6(7), e21833.
5. Tottoli, E. M., Dorati, R., Genta, I., Chiesa, E., Pisani, S., & Conti, B. (2020). Skin Wound Healing Process and New Emerging Technologies for Skin Wound Care and Regeneration. *Pharmaceutics*, 12(8).



6. Cañedo-Dorantes, L., & Cañedo-Ayala, M. (2019). Skin Acute Wound Healing: A Comprehensive Review. *International journal of inflammation*, 2019, 3706315.

**Chapter - 12**  
**Bioplastic Production from Microalgal Species: A  
Review**

**Authors**

**Shristi Dey**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

**Bidisha Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

**Suranjana Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India

**Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India

**Subhasis Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami  
Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal,  
India



# Chapter - 12

## Bioplastic Production from Microalgal Species: A Review

Shristi Dey, Bidisha Ghosh, Suranjana Sarkar, Semanti Ghosh and Subhasis Sarkar

### Abstract

Now a days, plastic waste is increasing which results in global plastic pollution, a severe threat to environment. There is a need to reduce plastic pollution across the globe. Reducing and recycling of plastic waste is not a comprehensive solution. Decreasing the usage of fossils-based plastic is an important aspect of sustainability. As an alternative to this problem bio-based plastic are gaining popularity. Bio based plastic can be obtained from biological feedstock instead of fossils-based sources. Bioplastic production from micro algal species has been considered as a new approach to be explored and further improve. The aim of this study is to discuss and evaluate the current state of bioplastic production from microalgae and possible optimization opportunity in the process and application areas.

**Keywords:** Bioplastic, Microalgae, biodegradable plastic, fossils based-plastic, bio-based plastic

### Introduction

Previously the main components of bio based plastic are plant based material, carbohydrates, proteins, sugar disaccharide fatty acids etc. Later plastic are produced from terrestrial crops such as corn, potatoes, fruits are vegetables skin etc. But bioplastic production from agricultural waste and crop has several disadvantages. Production needs huge area, water, nutrients, scientist and researchers are focusing on the production of bioplastic from microalgae which is relatively much easier to cultivate and has several advantages.

### There are various methods of bioplastic production from microalgae

1. Direct using microalgal biomass
2. Blending method
3. Biorefinery approach

*Chlorella* and *spirulina* are gaining more interest as microalgal source but

several other microalgal species such as *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* and *Microcystis aureginosa* from which PHB can be extracted from bioplastic production.

### **Features of Microalgae to be an Emerging Source of Bioplastic Production**

Although plant based plastic are giving promising result but still it faces many challenges including depleting source, poor sustainability, competition for food.

But unlike plant based bioplastic microalgae does not lead to food competition. There are several advantages of microalgae to be used as source of bioplastic production.

1. They need less harvesting time
2. It does not lead to food competition for human composition
3. High biomass production rate. (PHA, PHB, lipid, proti, started)
4. Do not require additional nutrient to grow and they are photosynthetic organism, reduce CO<sub>2</sub> level and green house effect.
5. They can survive in harsh conditions (temp, pH, humidity)
6. They are used to produce PHB – biopolymer as they are high in protein and lipid content.
7. They can be cultivated throughout the year.

### **Different Research using Various Species**

Many research were conducted to enhance PHA/PHB production from microalgae. A report by **Kavitha** reveals that *Botryococcus braunii* algae showed maximum production of PHB (249± 0.45 mg/L) and it uses sewage water as culture medium.

Under sulfur depleted medium production of starch based bioplastic gave excellent starch content.

Also it was proved in studies that leftover algal biomass is also excellent to produce bioplastic that has PHB content 29%

### **Microalgal Species used in Bioplastic Production**

In recent days *Chlorella* and *Spirulina* are mainly gaining popularity as microalga source but some other species of microalgae are also effective to produce bioplastic. Blending with plasticizers and compatibilizers are also an important process for bioplastic production.

Different species produce different by products a table combining all the datas regarding this review paper is explained.

## Chlorella

Chlorella are green algae and most found in fresh water and contains 60% of protein. This species is used in biomass polymer blends. After many tests Zeller (2014) found that blending is necessary for bioplastic production.

Biomass species	Type of product	Ratio of materials	Particle size of Biomass
<i>C. vulgaris</i>	100% algae based plastic and hybrid blends with PE and glycerol	Glycerol (0-30%)	53-75 microm
<i>C. Vulgaris</i>	Chlorella/ PVA composites	Compatibilizer (MA) Conc 0-6%	-
<i>C. Sorokiniana</i>	Starch granules	-	-
<i>Chlorella</i>	PP from chlorella and MPP ( maleic anhydride modified polypropylene	MPP/Chlorella 0.5	50 microm
Chlorella	Chlorella/PVC composites	Stabilizer	62-66 microm
<i>Chlorella</i>	Chlorella/PVA composites	Chlorella/distilled water	-
<i>C.SP</i>	Chlorella/PE composites	Chlorella /MPE	~1mm

Many test showed that Chlorella has better ability to produce bioplastic than spirulina.

## Spirulina

Manu studies conducted with different species of Spirulina. They are combined in following table

Species	Product	Ratio
<i>S. Platensis</i>	100% algae based plastic	Glycerol (10-50%)
<i>S plantensis</i>	Bioplastic film	Compatibilizers conc (0-9%)
<i>S plantensis</i>	Bioplastic flim	20%40% microalgae
<i>S. Platensis</i>	Spirulina based bioplastic	Plasticizers conc (15%20%)
<i>Spirulina</i>	Plasticized spirulina	-
<i>Spirulina</i>	Compatibilized spirulina	-
<i>Spirulina</i>	Spirulina composites	-

## Other microalgae species used for bioplastic production

Other than spirulina and *chlorella vulgaris*, *Chlorella fritschii*, *Phaeodactylum tricornerutum*, *calothrix scytonemica*, *Neochloris oleabundans* are rich in PHA and starch and used in bioplastic production. Many scientist worked with other species that are combined below.

Biomass species	Type of product	Ratio of material
<i>Chlorogloea fritschii</i>	Bioplastic poly -3 - hydroxybutyrate	-
<i>Phaeodactylum tricornerutum</i>	Bioplastic PHB	-
<i>Calothrix scytonemica</i> <i>Scenedesmus almeriensis</i> <i>Neichloris oleabundans</i>	Biobased plastic film	1:2 carboxymethyl cellulose: biomass
<i>Calothrix scytonemica</i>	PHA , Plastic film	Product 1:150 mg ( pure PH3B and 8ml of chloroform)  Product 2:100 mg of PH3B and 50 mg CMC mixed with 8 ml of CMC  Product 3:100 mg PH3B and 50 mg sucrose Octa acetate in 8ml of CMC
<i>Nannocloropsis gaditana</i>	Bio composites: biomass and PBAT	Ratio of biomass : 10, 20,30

## Additives mixed with algal biomass

Following table summarize the research done by using material that are blended with algal biomass to increase PHB PHA starch content in Product that are used in bioplastic production.

## Plasticizers and Compatibilizers

Blended material with biomass	Blended with organism
PE	Blended with <i>Chlorella</i> & <i>Spirulina</i>
PP	Blended with <i>Chlorella</i>
PVA	Blended with <i>Chlorella</i>
Wheat gluten	Blended with <i>Spirulina platensis</i>
PBS	Blended with <i>Spirulina</i>
PVA -g-MAH	Used in blending
Acetone	Used in blending
Sodium sulfite	Used in blending
BPO	Used in blending

Plasticizers are organic molecule which are blended with material to improve their flexibility and and Processibility plasticizers make target material softer. Glycerol is most used and demanded plasticizers in bioplastic

production. A study conducted by Ciapponi (2019) showed that Glycerol, octanoic acid, 1-4 butacediol have a great effect as plasticizers.

Compatibilizers are used to bind two polymer. It has two part. One part is compatible with target polymer and the other part is compatible with another polymer Compatibilizers increased the strength of biopolymer. Several type of Compatibilizers are used. Maleic anhydride, ethylene, methacryloyl carbamate etc.

Other Chemicals Used in the Process	Propose of usage
Ethanol	Suspension of biomass
Isotactic polypropylene	-
Citric acid	Bioplastic flimsy preparation
DCP	In the synthesis of PBS-g-MAH
Methanol	To remove pigments in PHB extraction process
CMC	PHB extraction from <i>Chlorella fritchii</i> biomass
Phosphate buffer saline	Cell washing
Sodium hypochlorite	PHA extraction
Sucrose Octa acetate	Casting of plastic film

## Cultivation of Microalgae

There are several process used by different scientist for microalgae cultivation. As an example, Some researchers proffered open systems where as some prefer closed systems. Mata *et al* (2010) said that open cultivation system requires lower investment cost and give high production rate. Where as Singh and Sharma (2012) said that closed systems are better because of changes if less contamination.

## Production System for Cultivation

There are mostly two common methods of microalgae production.

1. Open systems.
2. Closed systems

Open systems includes ponds and primary cultivation system. Closed systems such a photobioreactors.

## There are several advantages and disadvantages.

- **Open systems**
  - **Advantages**
    1. It is easy to clean
    2. Requires less investment
    3. Eco-friendly and advantageous



4. Gives higher production volume

- **Disadvantages**

1. Risk of contamination
2. Restricted to hardy species
3. Difficult to control suitable condition for growing culture.

- **Closed systems**

- **Advantages**

1. High cell densities
2. Prevent contamination
3. It has better culture control condition

- **Disadvantages**

1. Cleaning process is complex
2. Difficult to scale
3. Relatively expensive process.

- **Steps Involved in the Process**

There are several steps. The primary step is cultivation and harvesting. In the harvesting step many techniques are used including filtration, sedimentation, flocculation. Flocculation is more suitable step due to low energy requirements.

After harvesting two process can be done to prepare PHB.

The first method is hydrolysis after drying. In this method dried biomass is hydrolyzed to produce fermentable sugars.

Then the biomass could be used for *E. coli* fermentation and production of PHB.

The other method is lipid extraction procedure. This method can reduce overall cost of the process.

- **Method used for Bioplastic Production**

Compression molding is widely used techniques for bioplastic production. In this process a mixture of additives biomass and polymer are placed into a mold and compressed at a fixed temp and pressure for a specific time and forms bio composites.

Time, temp, and pressure can be changed according to the requirements.

But reported temp is from 120-180°C Compression pressures 30Kpa to 20Mpa and the time ranges to 5 min to 30 min.

The mixture should be properly mixed before starting Compression molding. Some people used methods melt mixing ( heating during mixing).temperature for melt mixing depends on researcher.

Scientist Fabra *et al* (2018) applied 130°C and 70 rpm for 5 min before Compression molding.

### **Several methodds are used**

1. Compression molding
  2. Melt mixing
  3. Hot molding
  4. Twin screw extrusion
  5. Solvent casting
- **Method use for Performance. Measurement of Prototypes**
    1. Thermal analysis
    2. Confocal laser scanning microscopy)
    3. Transparency
    4. Odour panel test
    5. Welting and water permeability

### **Bioengineering to Enhance Production Rate**

Many studies reveals that PHA/PHB are accumulated inside microalgal cell at a very low percentage. So for upscaling bioplastic production there is a need for bioengineering. Bio editing tools like CRISPR is used for modifying enzyme producing PHA / PHB content in microalgae.

Some emerging genetic engineering tools includes clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) Cas 9, which can be used to genetically engineer microalgae strain to produce PHA.

With the help of CRISPR- Cas 9 most of the challenge of bioplastic can be solved by editing the gene which code for enzyme responsible for producing a compound of interest in biopolymers like poly hydroxyalkonate.

- **Advantages of Bioplastic**
  - a. Eco-friendly
  - b. Biodegradable
  - c. Energy efficiency

- d. Reduction in litter
- e. Other advantages

## Conclusion

In this study the current situation of bioplastic production is reviewed. By reviewing many research articles it was clear that there is a potential of microalgae to be used as alternative of fossils based plastic to reduce pollution. *Chlorella and Spirulina* are mostly used algae and plasticizers and compatibilizers are added to enhance the production rate. As our population is growing we should take a step forward towards sustainable development and this approach is an important step towards this cause. Moreover, the use of various additives restrict the use of algal based bioplastic such as health care and food industry. So, further research is necessary for the better usage of microalgal bioplastic.

## References

1. A comprehensive review on bioplastic production from microalgae  
January 2022 Materials Today Proceedings  
56(6365) DOI:10.1016/j.matpr.2022.01.060
2. Bioplastic Production from Microalgae: A Review
3. By Senem Onen Cinar 1,\*ORCID, Zhi Kai Chong 1, Mehmet ali Kucuker  
2ORCID, Nils Wieczorek 1, Ugur Cengiz 3ORCID and Kerstin Kuchta 1
4. Sustainable Resource and Waste Management, Hamburg University of  
Technology, 21079 Hamburg, Germany
5. Faculty of Engineering, Department of Environmental Engineering,  
Canakkale Onsekiz Mart University, 17020 Canakkale, Turkey
6. Faculty of Engineering, Department of Chemical Engineering, Canakkale  
Onsekiz Mart University, 17020 Canakkale, Turkey
7. Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health 2020, 17(11), 3842;  
<https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph17113842>
8. Submission received: 17 April 2020 / Revised: 22 May 2020 / Accepted:  
26 May 2020 / Published: 28 May 2020
9. Analysis of polyhydroxybutyrate and bioplastic production from  
microalgae Sayeda M. Abdo & Gamila H. Ali
10. Bulletin of the National Research Centre volume 43, Article number: 97  
(2019) Cite this article
11. Carr NG (1966) The occurrence of poly-p-hydroxybutyrate in the blue-  
green alga, *Chlorogloea fritschii*. Biochim Biophys Acta 120:308–310

## **Chapter - 13**

### **Roles of Natural Microflora Present in Ganga Water**

#### **Authors**

##### **Subhasree Roy**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Department of Microbiology, Dinabandhu Andrews College, Baishnabghata, South Parganas, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Dr. Subhashish Sarkar**

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

##### **Dr. Tanmay Ghosh**

Department of Microbiology, Dinabandhu Andrews College, Baishnabghata, South Parganas, Kolkata, West Bengal, India



# Chapter - 13

## Roles of Natural Microflora Present in Ganga Water

Subhasree Roy, Dr. Subhashish Sarkar and Dr. Tanmay Ghosh

### Abstract

The Ganga, which originates in the Himalayas is the holiest river in Hinduism and people worship it. Anthropogenic activities and pollution are two of the many environmental conditions that threaten the Ganga River, a crucial water source. The presence of microorganisms that are resistant to antibiotics is a major worry since it could endanger both the environment and human health. Multiple metal-tolerant and antibiotic-resistant bacterial species from water samples taken from the Ganga River in India were the subject of the current investigation. Focusing on the growths of dangerous microbes in the Ganga River and their effects on humans and other animals is the primary goal of this review. Risk assessment of microorganisms present in water is a crucial aspect of ensuring public health. Waterborne microorganisms can pose risks through waterborne diseases and assessing these risks involves evaluating the potential exposure and health effects associated with the presence of specific microorganisms. There are some microbes present in Ganga water also help in decomposing sewage and plastic which is another aspect of this review. Microbial degradation of plastics is an intricate process that involves the breakdown of polymers into their component parts. Plastics are synthetic polymers, and their resistance to degradation is one of the reasons for their environmental persistence. However, certain microorganisms have evolved the ability to utilize plastics as a carbon source. Waste products, like sewage, rely on microbes to break down. This has been known for a long time. Bacteria and other microbes are utilized in conventional sewage treatment systems. Some more recent methods, on the other hand, include inoculating the sewage with a microbe that has been hand-picked for that specific treatment procedure.

**Keywords:** Antibiotic-resistant bacteria, River Ganga, Sewage, Plastic degradation, Pollution, Disease

## Introduction

More than a quarter of India's landmass is comprised of the Ganga river, which includes the entire states of Uttarakhand, Uttar Pradesh (UP), Bihar, and Delhi, as well as portions of Punjab, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, and West Bengal. In Hinduism, the Ganga River is venerated as a goddess and considered a sacred river. The Ganga river basin is extremely susceptible to human-caused changes because it is home to 400 million people, or around 5% of the global population, and there are about 520 people per square kilometre there (Singh & Singh, 2007). According to recent studies (Ahammad *et al.*, 2014; Niveshika *et al.*, 2016; Dubey & Reddy, 2019), the Ganga River has been significantly polluted and dangerous bacteria that are resistant to standard antibiotics have been found. Characteristic bacterial and fungal strains, capable of bioremediation of pollutants, have been observed in Ganga water (Behara *et al.*, 2020). The source of the resistance in bacteria is specifically humans as large number of populations depend on river Ganga for domestic, industrial and agricultural purposes. The mass ritualistic bathing brings lot of pilgrims. In addition, tourists are also attracted to the banks of the river for spiritual enlightenment, water sports, and trekking. Apart from these, the human settlements in the basin and industrial activities also influences the quality of the river and hence the microbial population. The Ganga River receives about 6614 MLD (Minimal liquid discharge) of wastewater per day, with an organic load of 426 tons per day measured in terms of biological oxygen demand (BOD) (CPCB, 2016). In response to both organic and inorganic substances, microbes undergo mutations that allow them to develop resistance to antibiotics and other substances. Antibiotics are just one of several environmental dangers that bacteria are able to adapt to thanks to their genetic resistance (Serwecinska, 2020). A similar drug-resistance mechanism is developed by bacteria that share an ecological niche with bacteria that have evolved to resist the effects of antibiotics. The development and dissemination of antibiotic-resistant microorganisms in the environment have been linked, according to multiple studies, to antimicrobial usage. (DOI: 10.1080/23311843.2016.1273750). Gram-negative bacteria already have some kind of resistance against antibiotic named penicillin, due to their distinctive structure. Penicillin targets protein within the peptidoglycan layer, therefore penicillin would be very effective against gram-positive bacteria(DOI:10.1186/s40709-016-0055-6). But some of the Gram-positive bacteria also acquire resistance to antibiotics including beta-lactams, colistin, quinolones and other antibiotics (Miller, 2016; Exner *et al.*, 2017; Datta and Gupta, 2019). The commensal coliform, *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*), usually enters into the river through livestock waste product and human excreta or night soil (Huttly, 1990).

These bacteria accumulate in river sediments and spread resistance genes, which they acquired in human/domestic animal intestines. Vertical and horizontal gene transfer allow bacteria to pass on their resistance genes to other bacteria (Young, 1993; Diwan *et al.*, 2018). It is possible for humans to contract these germs from river water through farming operations, drinking, and bathing. Bacterial antibiotic resistance poses a serious risk to human health and society at large, says the World Health Organization (WHO, 2014). As antibiotics lose some of their effectiveness, infections such as TB, pneumonia, and water and food-borne illnesses are becoming more difficult, if not impossible, to treat. One of the most prevalent bacterial illnesses is urinary tract infections (UTIs). Unfortunately, antibiotic resistance has been observed in many countries, leading to recurrent infections, longer hospital stays, and increased mortality (Alos *et al.*, 2005; Nickel, 2007; Cavagnaro Santa Maria, 2014; Mohammad *et al.*, 2016; Ahmed *et al.*, 2019). Bacteria have not only chromosome but also have a special small circular DNA called plasmid and these plasmids contain so called resistance genes (Doi: 10.11648/j.fem.20150103). To become resistant, bacterial plasmid is usually incorporated into parent DNA. mRNA being synthesized by plasmid (<https://doi.org/10.20546/ijcmas.2019.811.183>) and these are read by ribosomes which form polypeptides or protein structures that will help the bacteria to become resistant. Beta lactamases and other antibiotic-degrading enzymes can be formed from the polypeptide. In order to render penicillin ineffective, beta-lactamase must first break the beta-lactam rings that make up the active group of penicillin (DOI:10.1186/s40709-016-0055-6). Proteins on the cell membrane of bacteria also serve as efflux pumps. Bacteria that are resistant to tetracycline are able to expel the antibiotic through an efflux pump because it hinders protein synthesis. Another modification of some bacteria is Transpeptidase enzyme which is Penicillin Binding Proteins (PBP) in the peptidoglycan layer and these are targeted by penicillin and other beta-lactams antibiotics (Lovering *et al.*, 2012). Bacteria that have had their PBPs altered will alter the protein structure in a way that renders beta-lactam antibiotics ineffective. The development of resistance in methicillin-binding *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) bacteria has restricted the responsible use of antibiotics in both humans and animals (Bengtsson-Palme *et al.*, 2018). Utilising physico-chemical parameters, the water quality of the Ganga River has been examined in this communication (DOI (Journal): 10.37591/RRJoMV).

### **Microorganism found in Ganga**

Some of the important bacteria which were encountered in the Ganga waters include:



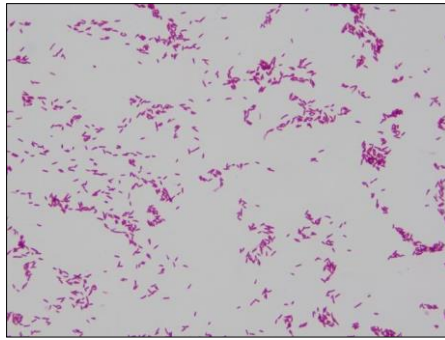
- *Escherichia coli*.
- *Clostridium perfringens*.
- *Actinomyces sp.*
- *Micrococcus sp.*
- *Salmonella sp.*
- *Staphylococcus aureus*.

Total bacterial density and qualitative variations are maximum in the rainy seasons and minimum during the winters. The main source of bacterial contamination at most of the sites is sewage discharge.

### **Characteristics of microorganism and disease caused**

#### ***Escherichia coli*:**

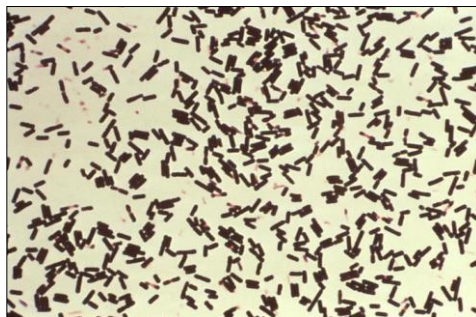
*E. coli* is a Gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic, rod-shaped, coliform bacterium of the genus *Escherichia* that is commonly found in the lower intestine of warm-blooded organisms (endotherms) <sup>[41, 13]</sup>. Most *E. coli* strains are harmless, but some serotypes can cause serious food poisoning in their host due to food contamination <sup>[50,23]</sup>. (<http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/23311843.2016.1273750>) *E. coli* reaches the Ganga River through fecal matter. Under aerobic circumstances, the bacterium develops rapidly in the fresh feces for three days [Figure 1]. Virulent forms of *E. coli* can develop gastroenteritis, which includes symptoms like diarrhea, stomach cramp, decreased urine frequency, lethargy, and paleness of the cheekbones and inside of the lower eyelids. In extremely rare instances, pathogenic strains can cause perforation and intestinal necrosis (death of tissue) without causing hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS), peritonitis, mastitis, septicemia or Gram-negative pneumonia (doi: 10.11648/j.fem.20150103.12). Even though severe illnesses like HUS are more common in infants and toddlers. Healthy people of any age can get *E. coli* and suffer serious complications <sup>[26]</sup>. One particular kind of *Escherichia coli*, O157:H7, is responsible for producing the bioterrorism-level Shiga toxin <sup>[24]</sup>. There is one strain of *E. coli* O157:H7 that produces the Shiga toxin (classified as a bioterrorism agent). This toxin causes the premature destruction of the red blood cells, which then clog the body's filtering system, the kidneys, and causing HUS. Signs of HUS include decreased frequency of urination, lethargy, and paleness of cheeks, and inside the lower eyelids.



**Fig 1:** *Escherichia coli*

### ***Clostridium perfringens***

*C. perfringens* is a Gram-positive, rod-shaped, anaerobic, spore-forming pathogenic bacterium of the genus *Clostridium* [19]. *C. perfringens* is ever present in nature and can be found as a normal component of decaying vegetation, marine sediment, the intestinal tract of humans and other vertebrates, insects, and soil. It has the shortest reported generation time of any organism at 6.3 min in thioglycollate medium [Figure 2]. Infections due to *C. perfringens* show evidence of tissue necrosis, bacteremia, emphysematous cholecystitis, and gas gangrene, which is also known as clostridial myonecrosis. (DOI (Journal): 10.37591/RRJoMV). The toxin involved in gas gangrene is known as  $\alpha$ -toxin, which inserts into the plasma membrane of cells, producing gaps in the membrane that disrupt normal cellular function. *C. perfringens* can participate in polymicrobial anaerobic infections. *C. perfringens* is commonly encountered in infections as a component of the normal flora. In this case, its role in disease is minor.



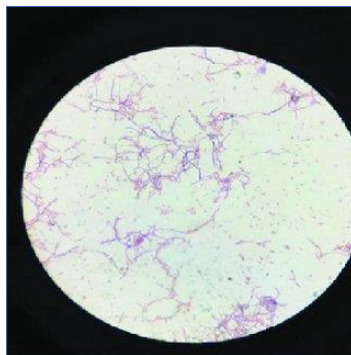
**Fig 2:** *Clostridium perfringens*.

### ***Actinomyces***

The *Actinobacteria* family of bacteria includes the genus *Actinomyces*.

Everyone of them is Gram-positive. Although individual *Actinomyces* bacteria are rod-shaped, colonies of this bacterium [Figure 3] can develop hyphae that resemble fungi. Some species of *Actinomyces* can even produce endospores [34]. Species of *Actinomyces* are found all over the place, from dirt to the microbiota of animals, including humans. Some species are found in the human and animal bodies as commensal flora, specifically in the skin, mouth, digestive tract, and vaginal areas [12]. Additionally, they are notorious for infecting both people and cattle, typically through punctures that allow them entry to the internal organs (<https://doi.org/10.1093/jac/dki206>).The danger is increased for those with impaired immune systems, as it is for other opportunistic infections. The majority of infections that arise after dental operations and oral abscesses are caused by *Actinobacteria*, which are naturally present in the gums. Opportunistic oral infections include several species of *Actinomyces*, which can infect mammals and humans. Abscesses in the mouth, lungs, or gastrointestinal tract are symptoms of actinomycosis, an uncommon disease caused by these bacteria. Although the symptoms may be similar to those caused by other bacterial species, *Actinomyces israelii* is the most common causative agent of actinomycosis and endocarditis. Notable in periodontal disease is the presence of *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans*. In most cases, oral-cervicofacial diseases are caused by this genus. The characteristic "lumpy jaw" is present but not painful.

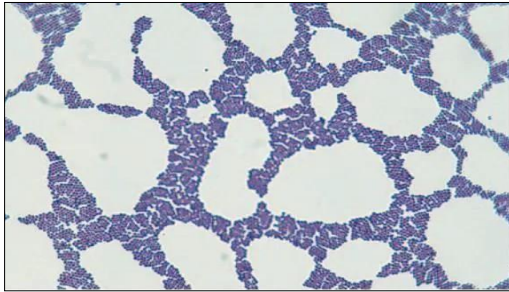
Thoracic actinomycosis (DOI (Journal): 10.37591/RRJoMV) is another kind of actinomycosis; it causes a tumour that spreads to the chest wall. It develops when organisms in the oropharynx are aspirated. Weakness, fever, and discomfort in the chest are some of the symptoms. Actinomycosis can also present as abdominal illness. A sinus tract that empties into the perianal or abdominal wall may result from this. Loss of appetite, nausea, and vomiting are among the symptoms [30].



**Fig 3:** *Actinomyces*

## ***Micrococcus* species**

The *Micrococcaceae* family include *Micrococcus* among its member genera. The microbes *Micrococcus* can be found in many different places, such as dirt, dust, and water. *Micrococci* usually manifest as tetrads and have Gram-positive spherical cells with a diameter of approximately 0.5 to 3 micrometers. Their catalase, oxidase, indole, and citrate activities are all positive. As much as half of a *Micrococcus* cell's bulk is devoted to its thick cell wall. *Micrococcus* genomes often have a GC-content of 65-75%, meaning they are rich in guanine and cytosine. Plasmids, which *Micrococci* frequently carry, can confer beneficial features to the host organism [Figure 4]. The majority of the population views *Micrococcus* as a commensal or saprotrophic bacterium; but, in hosts with impaired immune systems, such HIV patients, it can transform into an opportunistic pathogen.. (DOI:10.1186/s40709-016-0055-6). Because *Micrococcus* is common in the skin's microflora and is not often associated with illness, it can be challenging to pinpoint this genus as the source of an infection. In extremely rare instances, micrococcal lung infections have been known to cause the death of people with impaired immune systems. Other diseases that *Micrococci* can cause include endocarditis, meningitis, cavitating pneumonia (in immunosuppressed patients), septic shock, septic arthritis, recurrent bacteremia, and meningitis.

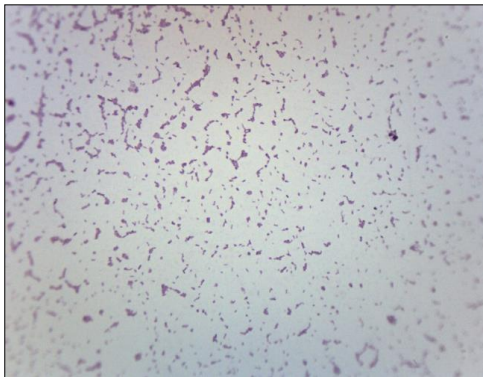


**Fig 4:** *Micrococcus* sp

## ***Salmonella* sp.**

*Salmonella* is a genus of rod-shaped (Bacillus) Gram-negative bacteria of the Enterobacteriaceae family. *Salmonella enterica* and *Salmonella bongori* are the two species of *Salmonella*. There are more than 2,500 serotypes within the *Salmonella enterica* genus, which is further subdivided into six subspecies [Figure 5] <sup>[32]</sup>. The majority of *Salmonella* species are motile enterobacteria that do not produce spores. Their cell bodies are 2–5 µm in length and have peritrichous flagella all around them. The cell diameters range from approximately 0.7 to 1.5 µm. They get their energy from organic oxidation

and reduction reactions; they are chemotrophs. Additionally, these microbes can either produce ATP in the presence of oxygen ("aerobically") or in the absence of oxygen by means of fermentation or alternative electron acceptors ("anaerobically"). Subspecies of *Salmonella* are ubiquitous in nature and in all warm-blooded animals around the globe. Only cold-blooded animals, especially reptiles, are susceptible to *S. bongori* [33]. Certain varieties of *Salmonella* cause infections within cells. Both animals and humans are capable of transmitting nontyphoidal serotypes. In most cases, they induce *Salmonella* food poisoning by invading only the gastrointestinal system; patients often recover without the need for antibiotics. (<https://doi.org/10.34104/ajpab.019.019111>). On the other hand, they can cause paratyphoid fever in Sub-Saharan Africa and necessitate antibiotic treatment right away. Serotypes of the typhoidal bacteria, which can cause food poisoning, typhoid fever, and paratyphoid fever, can only be passed from one person to another. Typhoid fever occurs when *Salmonella* invades the bloodstream - the typhoidal form; or in addition spreads throughout the body, invades organs, and secretes endotoxins - the septic form. This can lead to life-threatening hypovolemic shock and septic shock and requires intensive care including antibiotics.

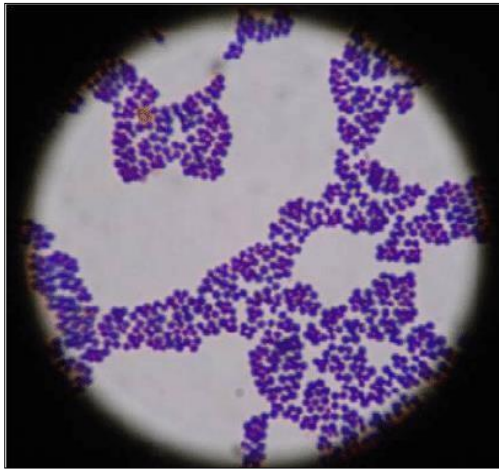


**Fig 5:** *Salmonella* sp

### ***Staphylococcus aureus***

*S. aureus* (also known as golden staph) is a Gram-positive, round-shaped bacterium that is a member of the Firmicutes and is frequently found in the nose, respiratory tract, and on the skin. It is often positive for catalase and nitrate reduction and is a facultative anaerobe that can grow without the need for oxygen [27]. Although *S. aureus* is not always pathogenic (and can commonly be found existing as a commensal), it is a common cause of skin infections including abscesses, respiratory infections such as sinusitis and

food poisoning([https://doi.org/ 10.14260/jemds/2017/1272](https://doi.org/10.14260/jemds/2017/1272)). By expressing a cell-surface protein that binds and inactivates antibodies, as well as virulence factors including powerful protein toxins, pathogenic strains frequently amplify infections. In clinical medicine, *S. aureus* is an issue all over the globe. No vaccine against *Staphylococcus aureus* has been licensed, despite extensive research and development. [Figure 6] Pneumonia, meningitis, osteomyelitis, endocarditis, toxic shock syndrome, bacteremia, sepsis, and boils are the common diseases that *S. aureus* can cause. Other serious illnesses include cellulitis, folliculitis, carbuncles, scalded skin syndrome, abscesses, and boils.(<http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/23311843.2016.1273750>).



**Fig 6:** *Staphylococcus aureus*.

## Morphological and Biochemical Characters

Name of bacteria	Shape	Gram nature	Catalase	Oxidase	Citrate	Indole	Urease	References
<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Rod shaped	-ve	+ve	-ve	-ve	+ve	-ve	<i>doi: 10.11648/j.fem.20150103.12</i>
<i>Clostridium perfringens</i>	Rod shaped	+ve	-ve	-ve	+ve	-ve	-ve	doi:10.1016/S0378- 1135(03)00061-0
<i>Actinomyces sp.</i>	Rod shaped	+ve	-ve	+ve	-ve	-ve	-ve	<a href="https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9686785/">https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9686785/</a>
<i>Micrococcus sp.</i>	Spherical shaped	+ve	+ve	+ve	-ve	-ve	+ve	<i>doi.org/10.19045/bspab.2016.50 02</i>

## **Analysis of Antibiotic Resistant and Susceptibility Test**

The Ganga River, a vital water source, is susceptible to various environmental conditions, including Pollution and Anthropogenic activities. A particular concern is the potential presence of Antibiotic-resistant bacteria in the water, posing risks to both environmental and public health concerns. The occurrence of Antibiotic Resistant bacteria is increasing in aquatic environments in the last few decades ([https://doi:10.1016/S0378-1135\(03\)00061-0](https://doi:10.1016/S0378-1135(03)00061-0)). Several investigations have been performed to study the prevalence of Antibiotic resistant bacteria in different water bodies. Indiscriminate use of Antibiotics in Humans and animals for treatment of different diseases leads to the release of antibiotics into the environment. Various mechanisms are responsible for the capability of microorganisms to tolerate antibiotics, and the occurrence of resistance to these antibiotics within bacterial species has risen notably since the commercial use of Antibiotics (<https://doi.org:10.1093/jac/dki206>). Varieties of Marker microorganisms have long been recognised as a reliable indicator of human waste water contamination. The presence of fecal bacteria in bodies of water and the prevalence of antibiotic resistance are two indicators of the anthropogenic impacts on coastal areas caused by the inflow of household effluents. Additionally, the disc diffusion method or Kirby-Bauer agar well diffusion method was used to determine the antibiotic susceptibility pattern of the Ganga water samples, which revealed the presence of coliform bacteria. Ampicillin, Chloramphenicol, Tetracycline, Erythromycin, Streptomycin, and many other clinically relevant antibiotics were used. A large percentage of strains were found to be resistant to  $\beta$  lactam antibiotics in the current evaluation of the microbial population for antibiotic resistance profiles to various classes of antibiotics.



Name of Bacteria	Amp	Chl	Tet	Str	Ery	Reference
<i>Escherichia coli</i>	S	S	R	R	R	<a href="https://doi.org/10.11648/j.fem.20150103.12">https://doi.org/10.11648/j.fem.20150103.12</a>
<i>Clostridium perfringens</i>	R	S	R	R	R	<a href="https://doi:10.1016/S0378-1135(03)00061-0">https://doi:10.1016/S0378-1135(03)00061-0</a>
<i>Actinomyces sp.</i>	R	S	R	R	R	<a href="https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9686785/">https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9686785/</a>
<i>Micrococcus sp.</i>	S	S	S	R	R	<a href="http://dx.doi.org/10.19045/bspab.2016.5002">http://dx.doi.org/10.19045/bspab.2016.5002</a>
<i>Salmonella sp.</i>	R	R	R	S	S	<a href="https://www.hindawi.com/journals/bmri/2021/3987111/">https://www.hindawi.com/journals/bmri/2021/3987111/</a>
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	R	R	S	S	S	<a href="https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/agricultural-and-biological-sciences/staphylococcus-aureus">https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/agricultural-and-biological-sciences/staphylococcus-aureus</a>

**Notes:** “S”-Sensitive “R”-Resistant; Amp-Ampicillin, Chl-Chloramphenicol, Tet-Tetracyclin, Ery- Erythromycin, Str-Streptomycin

## **Role of plastic degradation**

The review is conducted in a multi-stage process that starts with collecting water samples from various places along the river. After processing the samples and inoculating them onto specific media, colonies were isolated that degrade plastic and analyzed them thoroughly using morphological, biochemical, and molecular techniques. In order to learn about the physiological traits of the isolated strains, scientists conduct extensive biochemical and morphological analyses. We find the best circumstances for the isolated strains to thrive in order to make them better at breaking down plastic. Evaluations of mass loss and creation of degradation by-products are part of the quantitative tests used to quantify the efficiency of plastic breakdown. To further understand the processes these microbes use, the study investigates the extracellular enzymes generated by the bacteria that break down plastic. The results of this study provide ways to reduce plastic pollution in the Ganges River and add to the body of knowledge in environmental microbiology. Additional research and conservation initiatives can be built upon the thorough documentation of the isolation and characterisation procedure (DOI: 10.36094/sc.v88.2022.). The importance of microbes in trash decomposition has been known for a long time. One common approach to plastic degradation is the use of microorganisms. A more recent method involves inoculating the plastic with a microbe that has been hand-picked for its ability to break down that type of material. In a complicated process, microbes decompose plastic molecules into simpler compounds; this is known as plastic degradation.

## **Role of Sewage Degradation**

One of the biggest problems modern society has is pollution<sup>[35]</sup>. One third of India's water contamination originates from solid waste, industrial wastewater, and other harmful materials. The natural water system is under risk from industrial wastewater<sup>[4]</sup>. Numerous organic and inorganic substances found in this effluent are poisonous to the ecosystem's numerous living things<sup>[35]</sup>. The presence of these contaminants in wastewater, surface water, and groundwater has been demonstrated by multiple research studies<sup>[36]</sup>. Ganga water is also polluted with the sewage coming from the industries. Waste products, like sewage, rely on microbes to break down. This has been known for a long time. The use of microbes within sewage treatment systems is a component of conventional sewage treatment. However, in some more recent methods, a microbe that has been hand-picked for that specific sewage treatment procedure is introduced into the wastewater. "Starter cultures" might describe these types of organisms. Certain *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* bacteria

possess certain favourable traits (<https://www.researchgate.net/publication/298971373>). They deplete organic wastes thousands times quicker than those which are already present in waste. Isolated and used microorganisms such as *Arthobacteria*, *Flavobacterium*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Sphingomonas* degrade chlorinated phenol and other harmful substances.

## **Conclusion**

In the present study, it has been shown the prevalence of multiple antibiotic-resistant microorganisms, which are known to be the indicators of water contamination in the river Ganga. The majority of microbial populations isolated from this area were resistant to several antibiotics. Further studies are needed to establish the role of antibiotics in control of bacterial populations in River Ganga and subsequent management of these problems are vital to prevent the emergence of drug-resistant bacteria. On the other hand plastic-degrading microorganisms also have been isolated from the Ganges. This provides hope and inspiration for the development of sustainable practices to combat plastic pollution on a broader scale. It underscores the importance of interdisciplinary efforts to address environmental issues and encourages further exploration of nature-based solutions for a cleaner and healthier aquatic environment. Sewage wastewaters can have their pollution load reduced by these isolates in terms of total hardness, total alkalinity, pH, total turbidity, total chemical oxygen demand, and biological oxygen demand. By utilizing these isolates, the limitations of traditional biological treatments can be circumvented. Results from the study show that isolates have the ability to render treated effluent non-toxic, opening the door to the possibility of reusing the water. When it comes to cleaning up polluted environments, this bioremediation study will be useful.

## **Future Prospect**

The Ganga river is known for its rich biodiversity, including a diverse array of microorganisms such as bacteria, which are part of the natural microflora. The future prospect of Ganga water containing natural microflora holds several potential benefits and implications.: Some microorganisms have the ability to break down pollutants and contaminants in water, a process known as bioremediation. If the natural microflora in the Ganga river contains such species, it could contribute to the purification of the water and help in mitigating pollution. Microorganisms from the natural microflora of the Ganga river may possess unique enzymes or metabolites that could have industrial or biotechnological applications, such as in the production of

bioactive compounds, biodegradation of organic pollutants, or in bioprocesses for various industries. The presence of diverse microorganisms in the Ganga river highlights the importance of preserving this ecosystem and its natural microflora. Understanding and conserving the microflora can contribute to broader biodiversity conservation efforts in the region. Microorganisms in Ganga Water have crucial roles in nutrient cycling, decomposition, and symbiotic relationships with other organisms. The natural microflora in the Ganga river may contribute to maintaining ecological balance and supporting the overall health of the river ecosystem. Studying the natural microflora of the Ganga river can lead to the discovery of novel bacterial species, bioactive compounds, and ecological interactions, which can further enhance our understanding of bacterial biodiversity and their potential applications.

## References

1. Agarwal A, Pandey RS, Sharma B (2010) Water pollution with special reference to pesticide contamination in India. *Journal of Water Resource and Protection* 2:432-448.
2. Akhter A, Imran M, Akhter F (2014) Antimicrobial resistant coliform bacteria in the Gomti river water and determination of their tolerance level. *Bioinformation* 10(4): 167-174.
3. Allen DJ, Molur S, Daniel BA. The Status and Distribution of Freshwater Biodiversity in the Eastern Himalaya. *Northern Africa: IUCN; 2010. p. 23-30.*
4. Amarasinghe UA. Reviving the Ganges water machine: Potential. *Hydrol Earth Syst Sci* 2016;20:1085- 101.
5. Ayandiran TA, Ayandele AA, Dahunsi SO, Ajala OO (2014) Microbial assessment and prevalence of antibiotic resistance in polluted Oluwa River, Nigeria. *The Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Research* 40(3): 291-299.
6. .Barbara H. Williams *Gynecology*. 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2012. p. 65.
7. Bauer AW, Kirby WMM, Sherris JC, Turck M (1966) Antibiotic susceptibility testing by a standard single disk method. *American Journal of Clinical Pathology* 45(4): 494-496.
8. Bilgrami KS, Bhowmick S. Impact of abiotic factors on bacterial population of river Ganga. *Proc Indian Nat Sci Acad* 1986;B52:509-14.
9. Clean Up Or Perish. *The Times of India*. Available

- from:[http://www.gangaaction.org/book- review/clean-up-or-perish/](http://www.gangaaction.org/book-review/clean-up-or-perish/).  
[Last accessed on 2010 Mar 3]
10. Elisabeth S. The World's Dirty Rivers. Time. Available from: <http://content.time.com/time/health/article/0,8599,1581251,00.html>.  
[Last accessed on 2010May 3]
  11. El Sahli MS. Anaerobic Pathogens. In: Infectious Disease Module 2007. Guizhou: Baylor College of Medicine; 2007.
  12. Escherichia coli. CDC National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases; 2012.
  13. Ganga Pathway to be Complete in Three Years. The Times of India. Available from: <https://timesofindia.indiatimes.com/city/patna/Ganga-pathway-to-be-complete-in-three-years/articleshow/34068161.cms>.  
[Last accessed on 2014 Apr 24].
  14. Ganges River. Encyclopædia Britannica (Encyclopædia Britannica Online Library ed.); 2011. Available from:<https://www.britannica.com/place/Ganges-River>. [Last accessed on 2011 Apr 6].
  15. Ghafur AK (2010) An obituary– on the death of antibiotics. Journal of Association of Physicians of India 58(3): 143-144.
  16. Greenblat CL, Baum J, Klein BY, Nachshon S, Koltunov V, Cano RJ. Micrococcus luteus-survival in Amber. Microbial Ecology 2004;48:120-7
  17. Ganga can Bear no More Abuse. Times of India. Available from:<https://timesofindia.indiatimes.com/topic/Ganga-Can-Bear-No-More-Abuse.-Times-Of-India>. [Last accessed on 2009 Jul 18]
  18. Holt JG, editor. Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology. 9th ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins; 199
  19. Holt JG, Krieg NR, Sneath PHA, Staley JT, Williams ST (1994). Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, 9th Ed. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, USA.
  20. Houndt T, Ochman H (2000) Long-term shifts in patterns of antibiotic resistance in enteric bacteria. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 66(12): 5406-5409.
  21. Jain A. Draw Plan to Check Ganga Pollution by Sugar Mills. The Hindu. Available from: <https://www.thehindu.com/news/cities/Delhi/draw-plan->

- to-check-ganga-pollution- by-sugar- mills/article5939897.ece. [Last accessed on 2014 Apr 3].
22. Kamada N, Inoue N, Hisamatsu T, Okamoto S, Matsuoka K, Sato T, *et al.* Nonpathogenic *Escherichia coli* strain nissle1917 prevents murine acute and chronic colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005;11:455-63.
  23. Kenneth JR, Sherris RC. *Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases*. 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004. p. 310
  24. Lim JY, Yoon J, Hovde CJ. A brief overview of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and its plasmid O157. *J Microbiol Biotechnol* 2010;20:5-14.
  25. Lower Gangetic Plains Moist Deciduous Forests. Terrestrial Ecoregions. World Wildlife Fund. Available from: <https://www.worldwildlife.org/ecoregions/im0120>. [Last accessed on 2012 May 6].
  26. Masalha M, Borovok I, Schreiber R, Aharonowitz Y, Cohen G. Analysis of transcription of the *Staphylococcus aureus* aerobic class IB and anaerobic bionucleotide reductase genes in response to oxygen. *J Bacteriol* 2001;183:7260-72.
  27. Miller-Stones Travel Blog: Varanasi: The Rich, The Poor, and The Afterlife. Available from: <http://www.travelpod.com/#ixzz1W7q8JJhI>. [Last accessed on 2010 Dec 14].
  28. Mohanta T, Goel S (2014) Prevalence of antibiotic-resistant bacteria in three different aquatic environments over three seasons. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 186(8): 5089-5100.
  29. Mudryk Z, Skórczewsk P (1998) Antibiotic resistance in marine neustonic and planktonic bacteria isolated from the Gdansk Deep. *Oceanologia* 40(2): 125–136.
  30. Narain S. Ganga the river, its pollution and what we can do to clean it. 2014. *Centre Sci Env Technol* 1997;12:497-502. Newsletter. Clean Ganga. Available from: <http://www.cleanganga.com/?f>. [Last accessed on 2010 Jul 16].
  31. Paul D, Sinha SN (2013) Assessment of various heavy metals in surface water of polluted sites in the lower stretch of river Ganga, West Bengal: a study for ecological impact. *Discovery Nature* 6(14): 8-13.
  32. Petrova MI, Lievens E, Malik S, Imholz N, Lebeer S. *Lactobacillus* species as biomarkers and agents that can promote various aspects of vaginal health. *Front Physiol* 2015;6:81.

33. Pollution Assessment: River Ganga. Central Pollution Control Board; 2013. Available from: <http://www.cpcb.nic.in>
34. Report of the Committee on Pollution Caused by Leather Tanning Industry to the Water Bodies/Ground Water in Unnao District of Uttar Pradesh. Available from: <http://www.indiaenvironmentportal.org.in/content/372842/report-of-the-committee-on-pollution-caused-by-leather-tanning-industry-to-the-water-bodiesground-water-in-unnao-district-of-uttar-pradesh/>. [Last accessed on 2014 Apy 23].
35. Rosas I, Salinas E, Martínez L, Cruz-Córdova A, González-Pedrajo B, Espinosa N, Amábile-Cuevas CF (2015) Characterization of *Escherichia coli* isolates from an urban lake receiving water from a wastewater treatment plant in Mexico City: fecal pollution and antibiotic resistance. *Current Microbiology* 71(4): 490-495.
36. Sarkar P, Sinha S, Pandian P, Dubey L. Freshwater fish biodiversity in the River Ganga (India): Changing pattern, threats and conservation perspectives. *Rev FishBiol Fisheries*2012;22:251-72.
37. Senok AC, Verstraelen H, Temmerman M, Botta GA. Probiotics for the treatment of bacterial vaginosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009;4:CD006289.
38. Silbergeld EK, Graham J, Price LB (2008) Industrial food animal production, antimicrobial resistance, and human health. *Annual Review of Public Health* 29: 151–169.
39. Singleton P. *Bacteria in Biology, Biotechnology and Medicine*. 5th ed. New York: Wiley; 1999. p. 444- 54.
40. Sinha SN, Paul D (2015) Density of pollution indicator bacteria in relation to physicochemical factors during diel cycle of river Ganga at Ichapore, West Bengal, India. *Frontiers in Environmental Microbiology* 1(1): 9-13.
41. Su LH, Chiu CH. *Salmonella: Clinical importance and evolution of nomenclature*. *Chang Gung Med J* 2007;30:210-9
42. Sundarbans Freshwater Swamp Forests. Terrestrial Ecoregions. World Wildlife Fund. Available from: <https://www.worldwildlife.org/ecoregions/im0162>. [Last accessed on 2012 May 6]
43. Tenaillon O, Skurnik D, Picard B, Denamur E. The population genetics of commensal *Escherichia coli*. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2010;8:207-17.

44. The Economist. India and Pollution: Up to their Necks in it. Available from: <https://www.economist.com/asia/2008/07/17/up-to-their-necks-in-it>. [Last accessed on 2008 Jul 27].
45. Tortora GA. Microbiology: An Introduction. 9th ed. New Jersey: Pearson; 2008. p. 323-4
46. Tripathi PK. Funds Flow for Riverfront Project. The Telegraph. Available from: [https://www.telegraphindia.com/1130803/jsp/bihar/story\\_17188971.jsp](https://www.telegraphindia.com/1130803/jsp/bihar/story_17188971.jsp). [Last accessed on 2014 Apr 24].
47. Upper Gangetic Plains Moist Deciduous Forests. Terrestrial Ecoregions. World Wildlife Fund. Available from: <https://www.worldwildlife.org/ecoregions/im0166>. [Last accessed on 2012 May 6].
48. Vogt RL, Dippold L. Escherichia coli O157:H7 outbreak associated with consumption of ground beef, June-July 2002. Public Health Rep 2005;120:174-8.
49. Vignesh S, Muthukumar K, James RA (2012) Antibiotic-resistant pathogens versus human impacts: a study from three eco-regions of the Chennai coast, southern India. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64(4): 790– 800
50. Webster LF, Thompson BC, Fulton MH, Chestnut DE, Van Dolah RF, Leight AK, Scott GI (2004) Identification of sources of Escherichia coli in South Carolina estuaries using antibiotic resistance analysis. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 298(2): 179–195
51. Yin Q, Yue D, Peng Y, Liu Y, Xiao L (2013) Occurrence and distribution of antibiotic-resistant bacteria and transfer of resistance genes in Lake Taihu. Microbes and Environment